

TextGrid TEI Baseline Encoding

Marc Wilhelm Küster

Baseline Encoding

1 Introduction

The baseline encoding schema saw the light of the day in the TextGrid project. Its primary *raison d'être* is to serve as a reference format for cross-corpus searches on which project specific encodings can be mapped. As such it must be rich enough to capture major structural elements of importance in projects from a different disciplines and on different genres, yet simple enough to be treatable by the search engine.

The encoding has since seen uses beyond its original use case.

The first formal draft for the baseline encoded as an ODD file was released in May 2008. A revised version was published in November 2008 and has since gone through a number of minor revisions. Consult the svn for a full tracking of changes.

2 The formal schema

2.1 Elements

<TEI> (TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, comprising a TEI header and a text, either in isolation or as part of a <teiCorpus> element. [4. 15.1.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@version specifies the major version number of the TEI Guidelines against which this document is valid.

Status Optional

Datatype data.version

Note The major version number is historically prefixed by a P (for Proposal), and is distinct from the version number used for individual releases of the Guidelines, as used by (for example) the source of the <schemaSpec> element. The current version is P5.

Members Contained by Empty element

May contain

header: teiHeader

textstructure: text

transcr: sourceDoc

Declaration

```
element TEI
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute version { data.version }?,
```

```
( teiHeader, ( ( model.resourceLike+, text? ) | text ) )  
}
```

Schematron <s:ns prefix="tei" uri="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0"/>

Schematron <s:ns prefix="rng" uri="http://relaxng.org/ns/structure/1.0"/>

Example

```
<TEI version="5.0" xmlns="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">  
  <teiHeader>  
    <fileDesc>  
      <titleStmt>  
        <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>  
      </titleStmt>  
      <publicationStmt>  
        <p>First published as part of TEI P2, this is the P5  
          version using a name space.</p>  
      </publicationStmt>  
      <sourceDesc>  
        <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>  
      </sourceDesc>  
    </fileDesc>  
  </teiHeader>  
  <text>  
    <body>  
      <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>  
    </body>  
  </text>  
</TEI>
```

Note This element is required.

<abbr> (abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort. [3.5.5.]

Module core

Member of model.choicePart

Contained by

core: choice

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration element abbr { macro.phraseSeq }

Example

```
<choice>
  <expan>North Atlantic Treaty Organization</expan>
  <abbr cert="low">NorATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high">NATO</abbr>
  <abbr cert="high" xml:lang="fr">OTAN</abbr>
</choice>
```

Example

```
<choice>
  <abbr>SPQR</abbr>
  <expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan>
</choice>
```

Note The <abbr> tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may transcribe abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If abbreviations are not transcribed directly but *expanded* silently, then the TEI header should so indicate.

<accMat> (accompanying material) contains details of any significant additional material which may be closely associated with the manuscript being described, such as non-contemporaneous documents or fragments bound in with the manuscript at some earlier historical period. [10.7.3.3.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat

listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element accMat
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<accMat>A copy of a tax form from 1947 is included in the envelope
with the letter. It is not catalogued separately.</accMat>
```

<acquisition> contains any descriptive or other information concerning the process by which a manuscript or manuscript part entered the holding institution. [10.8.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore,
@notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso,
@from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom,
@notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: history

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element acquisition
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<acquisition>Left to the <name type="place">Bodleian</name> by
<name type="person">Richard Rawlinson</name> in 1755.
</acquisition>
```

<actor> contains the name of an actor appearing within a cast list. [7.1.4.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.castItemPart

Contained by

drama: castItem

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element actor { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<castItem>
  <role>Mathias</role>
  <roleDesc>the Burgomaster</roleDesc>
  <actor>Mr. Henry Irving</actor>
</castItem>
```

Note This element should be used only to mark the name of the actor as given in the source. Chapter 13. discusses ways of marking the components of names, and also of associating names with biographical information about a person.

<addName> (additional name) contains an additional name component, such as a nickname, epithet, or alias, or any other descriptive phrase used within a personal name. [13.2.1.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.personal (*@full*, *@sort*) (att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.persNamePart

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element addName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<persName>
  <forename>Frederick</forename>
  <addName type="epithet">the Great</addName>
  <roleName>Emperor of Prussia</roleName>
</persName>

```

<addSpan/> (added span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text added by an author, scribe, annotator or corrector (see also <add>). [11.3.1.4.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike
(@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent,
@precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)))
(att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type,
@subtype) att.spanning (@spanTo)

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan
foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element addSpan
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Schematron <sch:assert test="@spanTo">The spanTo= attribute of <sch:name/> is required.</sch:assert>

Schematron <sch:assert test="@spanTo">L'attribut spanTo est requis.</sch:assert>

Example

```
<handNote xml:id="HE0L" scribe="HelgiÓlafsson"/>
<!-- ... -->
<body>
  <div>
    <div>
      <!-- text here -->
    </div>
    <addSpan n="added gathering" hand="#HE0L" spanTo="#P025"/>
    <div>
      <!-- text of first added poem here -->
    </div>
    <div>
      <!-- text of second added poem here -->
    </div>
    <div>
      <!-- text of third added poem here -->
    </div>
    <div>
      <!-- text of fourth added poem here -->
    </div>
    <anchor xml:id="P025"/>
    <div>
      <!-- more text here -->
    </div>
  </div>
</body>
```


Note Both the beginning and the end of the added material must be marked; the beginning by the <addSpan> element itself, the end by the spanTo attribute.

<additional> groups additional information, combining bibliographic information about a manuscript, or surrogate copies of it with curatorial or administrative information. [10.9.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: msDesc msPart

May contain

msdescription: adminInfo surrogates

Declaration

```
element additional
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( adminInfo?, surrogates?, listBibl? )
}
```

Example

```
<additional>
  <adminInfo>
    <recordHist>
      <p>
<!-- record history here -->
      </p>
    </recordHist>
    <custodialHist>
      <p>
<!-- custodial history here -->
      </p>
    </custodialHist>
  </adminInfo>
  <surrogates>
    <p>
<!-- information about surrogates here -->
    </p>
  </surrogates>
  <listBibl>
    <bibl>
<!-- ... -->
    </bibl>
<!-- full bibliography here -->
  </listBibl>
</additional>
```

<additions> contains a description of any significant additions found within a manuscript, such as marginalia or other annotations. [10.7.2.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*))

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

element additions { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
--

Example

```
<additions>
  <p>There are several marginalia in this manuscript. Some consist of
    single characters and others are figurative. On 8v is to be found a
    drawing of
      a mans head wearing a hat. At times sentences occurs: On 5v:
      <q xml:lang="is">Her er skrif andres isslendin</q>,
      on 19r: <q xml:lang="is">þeim go</q>,
      on 21r: <q xml:lang="is">amen med aund ok munn halla rei knar hofud
      summu all huad
      batar þad mælgí ok mal</q>,
      On 21v: some runic letters and the sentence <q xml:lang="la">aue maria
      gracia plena dominus</q>.</p>
</additions>
```

<addrLine> (address line) contains one line of a postal address. [3.5.2. 2.2.4. 3.11.2.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of model.addrPart

Contained by

core: address

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element addrLine { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
  <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Note Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of component elements from the model.addrPart class. Other non-postal forms of address, such as telephone numbers or email, should not be included within an <address> element directly but may be wrapped within an <addrLine> if they form part of the printed address in some source text.

<address> contains a postal address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual. [3.5.2. 2.2.4. 3.11.2.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
 (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
 (*@change*))

Member of model.addressLike model.publicationStmntPart

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
 item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
 textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence publicationStmnt scriptNote
 typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
 genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName
 residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: addrLine cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb rs

figures: notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

namesdates: addName climate country forename genName geogFeat location nameLink
 offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```

element address
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.global*, ( ( model.addrPart ), model.global* )+ )
}

```

Example

```

<address>
  <street>via Marsala 24</street>

```

```
<postCode>40126</postCode>
<name>Bologna</name>
<name n="I">Italy</name>
</address>
```

Example

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>
  <addrLine>USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

Note This element should be used for postal addresses only. Within it, the generic element <addrLine> may be used as an alternative to any of the more specialized elements available from the model.addrPart class, such as <street>, <postCode> etc.

<adminInfo> (administrative information) contains information about the present custody and availability of the manuscript, and also about the record description itself. [10.9.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: additional

May contain

core: note

header: availability

msdescription: custodialHist recordHist

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element adminInfo
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( recordHist?, availability?, custodialHist?, model.noteLike? )
}
```

Example

```
<adminInfo>
  <recordHist>
    <source>Record created <date>1 Aug 2004</date>
  </source>
</recordHist>
<availability>
  <p>Until 2015 permission to photocopy some materials from this
    collection has been limited at the request of the donor. Please ask
    repository staff for details
```

```

        if you are interested in obtaining photocopies from Series 1:
        Correspondence.</p>
</availability>
<custodialHist>
  <p>Collection donated to the Manuscript Library by the Estate of
    Edgar Holden in 1993. Donor number: 1993-034.</p>
</custodialHist>
</adminInfo>

```

<affiliation> (affiliation) contains an informal description of a person's present or past affiliation with some organization, for example an employer or sponsor. [15.2.2.]

Module names dates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit,
 @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min,
 @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dateable (@calendar,
 @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
 (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
 (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom,
 @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.naming (@role,
 @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of model.addressLike model.persStateLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
 item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
 textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
 genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName
 person personGrp residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element affiliation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<affiliation>Junior project officer for the US <name type="org">National
Endowment for
  the Humanities</name>
</affiliation>
<affiliation notAfter="1960-01-01" notBefore="1957-02-28">Paid up member of
the
<orgName>Australian Journalists Association</orgName>
</affiliation>

```

Note If included, the name of an organization may be tagged using either the <name>
element as above, or the more specific <orgName> element.

<age> (age) specifies the age of a person.

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit,
@quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min,
@max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dateable (@calendar,
@period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
(att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
(att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom,
@from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

@value supplies a numeric code representing the age or age group

Status Optional

Datatype `data.count`

Note This attribute may be used to complement a more detailed discussion of a person's age in the content of the element

Member of model.persStateLike

Contained by

namesdates: person personGrp

May contain

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb hi index lb milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```

element age
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  attribute value { data.count }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}

```

Example

```
<age value="2" notAfter="1986">under 20 in the early eighties</age>
```

Note As with other culturally-constructed traits such as sex, the way in which this concept is described in different cultural contexts may vary. The normalizing attributes are provided as a means of simplifying that variety to Western European norms and should not be used where that is inappropriate. The content of the element may be used to describe the intended concept in more detail, using plain text.

<altIdentifier> (alternative identifier) contains an alternative or former structured identifier used for a manuscript, such as a former catalogue number. [10.4.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: msIdentifier msPart

May contain

core: note

header: idno

msdescription: collection institution repository

namesdates: country settlement

Declaration

```
element altIdentifier
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.placeNamePart_sequenceOptional,
    institution?,
    repository?,
    collection?,
    idno,
    note?
  )
}
```

Example

```
<altIdentifier>
  <settlement>San Marino</settlement>
  <repository>Huntington Library</repository>
  <idno>MS.El.26.C.9</idno>
</altIdentifier>
```

Note An identifying number of some kind must be supplied if known; if it is not known, this should be stated.

<anchor/> (anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element. [8.4.2. 16.4.]

Module linking

Attributes Attributes att.global (~~@xml:id~~, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)

att.global linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.analytic (@ana) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change)

@xml:id (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

Derived from att.global

Status Required

Datatype xsd:ID

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: w

2 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan
foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def entry etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element anchor
{
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.style,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.global.change.attribute.change,
  attribute xml:id { xsd:ID },
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<s>The anchor is he<anchor xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>
<s>Help me find it.<ptr target="#A234"/>
</s>
```

Note On this element, the global `xml:id` attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

<app> (apparatus entry) contains one entry in a critical apparatus, with an optional lemma and usually one or more reading or a note on the relevant passage. [12.1.1.]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

@type classifies the variation contained in this element according to some convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

@from identifies the beginning of the lemma in the base text, if necessary.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Note This attribute is only used when the double-end point method of apparatus markup is used.

@to identifies the endpoint of the lemma in the base text, if necessary.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Note This attribute is only used when the double-end point method of apparatus markup is used, with the encoded apparatus held in a separate file rather than being embedded *in-line* in the base-text file.

@loc (location) indicates the location of the variation, when the location-referenced method of apparatus markup is used.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values A string containing a canonical reference for the passage to which the variation applies.

Note This attribute is used only when the location-referenced encoding method is used.

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc w

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell

header: change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation birth country death education faith floruit forename

2 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName
sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem listApp rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

figures: notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: lem rdg rdgGrp wit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element app
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute from { data.pointer }?,
  attribute to { data.pointer }?,
  attribute loc { list { data.word+ } }?,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( lem, model.global*, ( wit, model.global* )? )?,
    (
      ( model.rdgLike, model.global*, ( wit, model.global* )? )
      | ( rdgGrp, model.global*, ( wit, model.global* )? )
    )*
  )
}
```

Schematron <sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lem[generate-id(current()) = generate-id(ancestor::tei:app[1])]) < 2">Only one <lem> element may appear within a single apparatus entry, whether it appears outside a <rdgGrp> element or within it.</sch:assert>

Example

```
<app>
  <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>
  <rdg wit="#La" type="substantive">Experiment</rdg>
  <rdg wit="#Ra2" type="substantive">Eryment</rdg>
</app>
```

Example

```
<app type="substantive">
  <rdgGrp type="subvariants">
    <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>
    <rdg wit="#Ha4">Experiens</rdg>
  </rdgGrp>
  <rdgGrp type="subvariants">
    <lem wit="#Cp #Ld1">Experiment</lem>
    <rdg wit="#La">Ex<g ref="#per"/>iment</rdg>
  </rdgGrp>
```

```
<rdgGrp type="subvariants">
  <lem>Eriment<wit>[unattested]</wit>
  </lem>
  <rdg wit="#Ra2">Eryment</rdg>
</rdgGrp>
</app>
```

<author> in a bibliographic reference, contains the name(s) of an author, personal or corporate, of a work; for example in the same form as that provided by a recognized bibliographic name authority. [3.11.2.2. 2.2.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

header: titleStmt

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element author
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne, comtesse de
(1634–1693)</author>
<author>Anonymous</author>
<author>Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation</author>
<author>
  <persName>Beaumont, Francis</persName> and
  <persName>John Fletcher</persName>
</author>
<author>
  <orgName key="BBC">British Broadcasting
  Corporation</orgName>: Radio 3 Network
</author>
```

Note Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use a generally recognized name authority file to supply the content for this element. The attributes *key* or *ref* may also be used to reference canonical information about the author(s) intended from any appropriate authority, such as a library catalogue or online resource. In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network responsible for making the broadcast. Where an author is unknown or unspecified, this element may contain text such as *Unknown* or *Anonymous*. When the appropriate TEI modules are in use, it may also contain detailed tagging of the names used for people, organizations or places, in particular where multiple names are given.

<authority> (release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making a work available, other than a publisher or distributor. [2.2.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of model.publicationStmtPart

Contained by

core: monogr

header: publicationStmt

May contain

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb hi index lb milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element authority { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq.limited }
```

Example

```
<authority>John Smith</authority>
```

<availability> supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, any licence applying to it, etc. [2.2.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

@status supplies a code identifying the current availability of the text.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **free** the text is freely available.

unknown the status of the text is unknown. [Default]

restricted the text is not freely available.

Member of model.publicationStmtPart

Contained by

header: publicationStmt

msdescription: adminInfo

May contain

core: p

header: licence

Declaration

```
element availability
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,
  ( model.availabilityPart | model.pLike )+
}
```

Example

```
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>
<availability status="free">
  <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>
<availability status="restricted">
```

```
<p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>
```

Example

```
<availability>
  <licence target="http://opensource.org/licenses/MIT">
    <p>The MIT License
      applies to this document.</p>
    <p>Copyright (C) 2011 by The University of Victoria</p>
    <p>Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining
a copy
of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"),
to deal
in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the
rights
to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or
sell
copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is
furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:</p>
    <p>The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be
included in
all copies or substantial portions of the Software.</p>
    <p>THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND,
EXPRESS OR
IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF
MERCHANTABILITY,
FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT
SHALL THE
AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER
LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE,
ARISING FROM,
OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS
IN
THE SOFTWARE.</p>
  </licence>
</availability>
```

Note A consistent format should be adopted

<back> (back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

[4.7. 4.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of

Contained by

textstructure: text

May contain

core: cb gap gb head index lb milestone note pb

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue set

figures: notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

textstructure: byline closer div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle
epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element back
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( model.div1Like ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )*
      )
      | (
        ( model.divLike ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )*
      )
    )?
  ),
  ( ( ( model.divBottomPart ), ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )? )
}
```

Example

```
<back>
<div1 type="appendix">
  <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
  <p>To shew the Depravity of human Nature </p>
</div1>
<div1 type="epistle">
  <head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires may be inserted</head>
  <salute>Sir.</salute>
  <p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return it to the Vatican, if
you please </p>
</div1>
<div1 type="advert">
  <head>The Books usually read by the Scholars of Mrs Two-Shoes are these
and are sold at Mr
  Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's Church-yard.</head>
  <list>
    <item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
    <item n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
    <item n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected from the Writers
of all Nations,
    10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</item>
  </list>
</div1>
<div1 type="advert">
  <head>
    <hi rend="center">By the KING's Royal Patent,</hi> Are sold by J.
NEWBERY, at the
    Bible and Sun in St. Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
  <list>
```

```
<item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the Small-Pox, Measles,
Colds, &c.
  2s. 6d</item>
<item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
</list>
</div1>
</back>
```

Note The content model of back matter is identical to that of front matter, reflecting the facts of cultural history.

<bibl> (bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged. [3.11.1. 2.2.7. 15.3.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status)

Member of model.biblLike model.biblPart model.msItemPart model.personPart

Contained by

core: bibl cit corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout msItem msItemStruct musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

namesdates: climate event location org person personGrp place population terrain trait

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address author bibl cb choice citedRange date editor emph foreign gap gb hi index lb milestone note pb pubPlace publisher ref rs term textLang time title

figures: notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: edition extent idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: depth dim height msIdentifier width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat

location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

Declaration

```

element bibl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.highlighted
    | model.pPart.data | model.pPart.edit   | model.segLike      | model.ptrLike      | mo
  )
}

```

Example

```

<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in
English (Yale,
1990)</bibl>

```

Example

```

<bibl>
  <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the
Wood</title>. In
  <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
  <publisher>OUP</publisher>
  <date>1968</date>.
</bibl>

```

Example

```

<bibl type="article" subtype="book_chapter" xml:id="carlin_2003">
  <author>
    <name>
      <surname>Carlin</surname>
      (<forename>Claire</forename>)</name>
    </author>,
  <title level="a">The Staging of Impotence : France's last
congrès</title> dans
  <bibl type="monogr">
    <title level="m">Theatrum mundi : studies in honor of Ronald W.
Tobin</title>, éd.
  <editor>
    <name>
      <forename>Claire</forename>
      <surname>Carlin</surname>
    </name>
  </editor> et
  <editor>
    <name>
      <forename>Kathleen</forename>
      <surname>Wine</surname>
    </name>
  </editor>,

```

```

<pubPlace>Charlottesville, Va.</pubPlace>,
<publisher>Rookwood Press</publisher>,
<date when="2003">2003</date>.
</bibl>
</bibl>

```

Note Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the *biblPart* class

<biblFull> (fully-structured bibliographic citation) contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present. [3.11.1. 2.2. 2.2.7. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.declarable (*@default*) att.sortable (*@sortKey*) att.docStatus (*@status*)

Member of model.biblLike

Contained by

core: cit corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

namesdates: climate event location org place population terrain trait

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

header: extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Declaration

```

element biblFull
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  (
    (
      titleStmt,
      editionStmt?,
      extent?,
      publicationStmt,
      seriesStmt?,
      notesStmt?
    ),
    sourceDesc*
  )
}

```

```
    )  
  }
```

Example

```
<biblFull>  
  <titleStmt>  
    <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers  
from the middle ages  
    to the present</title>  
    <author>Blain, Virginia</author>  
    <author>Clements, Patricia</author>  
    <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>  
  </titleStmt>  
  <editionStmt>  
    <edition>UK edition</edition>  
  </editionStmt>  
  <extent>1231 pp</extent>  
  <publicationStmt>  
    <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>  
    <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>  
    <date>1990</date>  
  </publicationStmt>  
  <sourceDesc>  
    <p>No source: this is an original work</p>  
  </sourceDesc>  
</biblFull>
```

<biblStruct> (structured bibliographic citation) contains a structured bibliographic citation, in which only bibliographic sub-elements appear and in a specified order. [3.11.1. 2.2.7. 15.3.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.docStatus (@status)

Member of model.biblLike model.msItemPart

Contained by

core: cit corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout msItem msItemStruct musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

namesdates: climate event location org place population terrain trait

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: citedRange monogr note ref

header: idno

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```

element biblStruct
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  (
    analytic*,
    ( monogr, series* )+,
    ( model.noteLike | idno | model.ptrLike | relatedItem | citedRange )*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<biblStruct>
  <monogr>
    <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
    <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
    <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
    <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English: women writers
from the middle ages
to the present</title>
    <edition>first edition</edition>
    <imprint>
      <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
      <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
      <date>1990</date>
    </imprint>
  </monogr>
</biblStruct>

```

<binding> contains a description of one binding, i.e. type of covering, boards, etc. applied to a manuscript. [10.7.3.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

@contemporary specifies whether or not the binding is contemporary with the majority of its contents

Status Optional

Datatype data.xTruthValue

Note The value true indicates that the binding is contemporaneous with its contents; the value false that it is not. The value unknown should be used when the date of either binding or manuscript is unknown

Member of *contained by*

msdescription: bindingDesc

May contain

core: p

msdescription: condition decoNote

Declaration

```
element binding
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  attribute contemporary { data.xTruthValue }?,
  ( model.pLike | condition | decoNote )+
}
```

Example

```
<binding contemporary="true">
  <p>Contemporary blind stamped leather over wooden boards with evidence of
  a fore edge clasp
  closing to the back cover.</p>
</binding>
```

Example

```
<bindingDesc>
  <binding contemporary="false">
    <p>Quarter bound by the Phillipps' binder, Bretherton, with his sticker
    on the front
    pastedown.</p>
  </binding>
  <binding contemporary="false">
    <p>Rebound by an unknown 19th c. company; edges cropped and gilt.</p>
  </binding>
</bindingDesc>
```

<bindingDesc> (binding description) describes the present and former bindings of a manuscript, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of distinct <binding> elements, one for each binding of the manuscript. [10.7.3.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

core: p

msdescription: binding condition decoNote

Declaration

```

element bindingDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.pLike | decoNote | condition )+ | binding+ )
}

```

Example

```

<bindingDesc>
  <p>Sewing not visible; tightly rebound over
  19th-cent. pasteboards, reusing panels of 16th-cent. brown leather with
  gilt tooling à la fanfare, Paris c. 1580-90, the centre of each
  cover inlaid with a 17th-cent. oval medallion of red morocco tooled in
  gilt (perhaps replacing the identifying mark of a previous owner); the
  spine similarly tooled, without raised bands or title-piece; coloured
  endbands; the edges of the leaves and boards gilt.Boxed.</p>
</bindingDesc>

```

<**birth**> (birth) contains information about a person's birth, such as its date and place.
[15.2.2.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit,
 @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min,
 @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.datable (@calendar,
 @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
 (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
 (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom,
 @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.naming (@role,
 @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of model.persEventLike

Contained by

namesdates: person personGrp

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element birth
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<birth>Before 1920, Midlands region.</birth>
```

Example

```
<birth when="1960-12-10">In a small cottage near  
<name type="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</name>,  
early in the morning of <date>10 Dec 1960</date>  
</birth>
```

<body> (text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter. [4.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of

Contained by

textstructure: text

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap gb head index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q
quote sp stage

dictionaries: entry superEntry

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation relationGrp

textcrit: listApp listWit witDetail

2 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

textstructure: byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element body
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( ( model.divTop ), ( model.global | model.divTop )* )?,
    ( ( model.divGenLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )?,
    (
      ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
      | ( ( model.divlLike ), ( model.global
      | model.divGenLike )* )+
      | (
        ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
        (
          ( ( model.divLike ), ( model.global | model.divGenLike )* )+
          | ( ( model.divlLike ), ( model.global
          | model.divGenLike )* )+
        )?
      )
    ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<body>
  <l>Nu scylun hergan hefaenricaes uard</l>
  <l>metudæs maecti end his modgidanc</l>
  <l>uerc uuldurfadur sue he uundra gihuaes</l>
  <l>eci dryctin or astelidæ</l>
  <l>he aerist scop aelda barnum</l>
  <l>heben til hrofe haleg scepen.</l>
  <l>tha middungeard moncynnæs uard</l>
  <l>eci dryctin æfter tiadæ</l>
  <l>firum foldu frea allmectig</l>
  <trailer>primo cantauit Cædmon istud carmen.</trailer>
</body>
```

<byline> contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work. [4.2.2. 4.5.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue

figures: table

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

textstructure: docAuthor

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element byline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | docAuthor | model.global ) *
}
```

Example

<byline>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the
while in London. Never made publick before.**</byline>**

Example

<byline>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS**</byline>**

Example

<byline>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington**</byline>**

Example

<byline>BY
<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,**</docAuthor>**
Master of Arts,
(Somtimes)
Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.**</byline>**

Note The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the <docAuthor> element.

<c> (character) represents a character. [17.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
 (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
 (*@change*)) att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*) att.typed (*type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

analysis: pc w

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
 item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
 textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell

header: change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation birth country death education faith floruit forename
 genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName
 sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```

element c
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datcat.attribute.datcat,
  att.datcat.attribute.valueDatcat,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.xtext}

```

Example

```

<phr>
  <c>M</c>
  <c>0</c>
  <c>A</c>
  <c>I</c>
  <w>doth</w>
  <w>sway</w>
  <w>my</w>

```

```
<w>life</w>
</phr>
```

Note Contains a single character, a <g> element, or a sequence of graphemes to be treated as a single character. The type attribute is used to indicate the function of this segmentation, taking values such as letter, punctuation, or digit etc.

<caesura/> marks the point at which a metrical line may be divided. [6.2.]

Module verse

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.lPart

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell

header: change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation birth country death education faith floruit forename genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Declaration `element caesura { att.global.attributes, empty }`

Example

```
<l>Hwæt we Gar-Dena <caesura/> in gear-dagum</l>
<l>peod-cyninga <caesura/> þrym gefrunon,</l>
<l>hy ða æþelingas <caesura/> ellen fremedon.</l>
```

<calendar> describes a calendar or dating system used in a dating formula in the text. [2.4.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*)

Member of

Contained by

header: calendarDesc

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element calendar
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  model.pLike+
}
```

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
  <calendar xml:id="Julian">
    <p>Julian Calendar (including proleptic)</p>
  </calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
  <calendar
    xml:id="Egyptian"
    target="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Egyptian_calendar">
    <p>Egyptian calendar (as defined by Wikipedia)</p>
  </calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

<calendarDesc> (calendar description) contains a description of the calendar system used in any dating expression found in the text. [2.4. 2.4.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

header: calendar

Declaration

```
element calendarDesc { att.global.attributes, calendar+ }
```

Example

```

<calendarDesc>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AD">
    <p>Anno Domini (Christian Era)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AH">
    <p>Anno Hegirae (Muhammedan Era)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AME">
    <p>Mauludi Era (solar years since Mohammed's birth)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AM">
    <p>Anno Mundi (Jewish Calendar)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AP">
    <p>Anno Persici</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_AS">
    <p>Aji Saka Era (Java)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_BE">
    <p>Buddhist Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_CB">
    <p>Cooch Behar Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_CE">
    <p>Common Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_CL">
    <p>Chinese Lunar Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_CS">
    <p>Chula Sakarat Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_EE">
    <p>Ethiopian Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_FE">
    <p>Fasli Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_ISO">
    <p>ISO 8601 calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_JE">
    <p>Japanese Calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_KE">
    <p>Khalsa Era (Sikh calendar)</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_KY">
    <p>Kali Yuga</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_ME">
    <p>Malabar Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_MS">
    <p>Monarchic Solar Era</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_NS">
    <p>Nepal Samwat Era</p>
  </calendar>

```

```
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_OS">
  <p>Old Style (Julian Calendar)</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_RS">
  <p>Rattanakosin (Bangkok) Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_SE">
  <p>Saka Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_SH">
  <p>Mohammedan Solar Era (Iran)</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_SS">
  <p>Saka Samvat</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_TE">
  <p>Tripurabda Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_VE">
  <p>Vikrama Era</p>
</calendar>
<calendar xml:id="cal_VS">
  <p>Vikrama Samvat Era</p>
</calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Gregorian">
    <p>Gregorian calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Julian">
    <p>Julian calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Islamic">
    <p>Islamic or Muslim (hijri) lunar calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Hebrew">
    <p>Hebrew or Jewish lunisolar calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Revolutionary">
    <p>French Revolutionary calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Iranian">
    <p>Iranian or Persian (Jalaali) solar calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Coptic">
    <p>Coptic or Alexandrian calendar</p>
  </calendar>
  <calendar xml:id="cal_Chinese">
    <p>Chinese lunisolar calendar</p>
  </calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

Example

```
<calendarDesc>
  <calendar
    xml:id="cal_Egyptian"
    target="http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Egyptian_calendar">
```



```
<p>Egyptian calendar (as defined by Wikipedia)</p>
</calendar>
</calendarDesc>
```

Note In the first example above, calendars and short codes for xml:ids are from W3 guidelines at

<camera> describes a particular camera angle or viewpoint in a screen play. [7.3.1. 7.3.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.stageLike

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element camera
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<view>George glances at the window--and freezes.
<camera type="cut">New angle--shock cut</camera>
Out the window the body of a dead man suddenly slams into frame
</view>
```

<caption> contains the text of a caption or other text displayed as part of a film script or screenplay. [7.3.1. 7.3.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.stageLike

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element caption { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
<camera>Zoom in to overlay showing some stock film of hansom cabs  
galloping past</camera>  
<caption>London, 1895.</caption>  
<caption>The residence of Mr Oscar Wilde.</caption>  
<sound>Suitably classy music starts.</sound>  
<view>Mix through to Wilde's drawing room. A crowd of suitably  
dressed folk are engaged in typically brilliant conversation,  
laughing affectedly and drinking champagne.</view>  
<sp>  
  <speaker>Prince of Wales</speaker>  
  <p>My congratulations, Wilde. Your latest play is a great success.  
</p>  
</sp>
```

Note A specialized form of stage direction.

<castGroup> (cast list grouping) groups one or more individual castItem elements
within a cast list. [7.1.4.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of

Contained by

drama: castGroup castList

May contain

core: cb gap gb head index lb milestone note pb

drama: castGroup castItem roleDesc

figures: notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

textstructure: trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```

element castGroup
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.global | model.headLike )*,
    ( ( castItem | castGroup | roleDesc ), model.global* )+,
    ( trailer, model.global* )?
  )
}

```

Example

```

<castGroup rend="braced">
  <castItem>
    <role>Walter</role>
    <actor>Mr Frank Hall</actor>
  </castItem>
  <castItem>
    <role>Hans</role>
    <actor>Mr F.W. Irish</actor>
  </castItem>
  <roleDesc>friends of Mathias</roleDesc>
</castGroup>

```

Note The *rend* attribute may be used, as here, to indicate whether the grouping is indicated by a brace, whitespace, font change, etc. Note that in this example the role description “friends of Mathias” is understood to apply to both roles equally.

<castItem> (cast list item) contains a single entry within a cast list, describing either a single role or a list of non-speaking roles. [7.1.4.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change* (*@change*))

@type characterizes the cast item.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Legal values are: **role** the item describes a single role. [Default]

list the item describes a list of non-speaking roles.

Member of

drama: castGroup castList

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

drama: actor role roleDesc

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element castItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "role" | "list" }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.castItemPart | model.phrase | model.global )*
```

Example

```
<castItem>
  <role>Player</role>
  <actor>Mr Milward</actor>
</castItem>
```

Example

```
<castItem type="list">Constables, Drawer, Turnkey, etc.</castItem>
```

<castList> (cast list) contains a single cast list or dramatis personae. [7.1.4. 7.1.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.frontPart.drama model.inter

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: back body div docEdition epigraph front imprimatur postscript signed
titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

2 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap gb head index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q
quote sp stage

dictionaries: entry superEntry

drama: camera caption castGroup castItem castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation relationGrp

textcrit: listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener salute

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element castList
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( model.common ), model.global* )*,
    ( ( castItem | castGroup ), model.global* )+,
    ( ( model.common ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<castList>
  <castGroup>
    <head rend="braced">Mendicants</head>
    <castItem>
      <role>Aafaa</role>
      <actor>Femi Johnson</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Blindman</role>
      <actor>Femi Osofisan</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Goyi</role>
      <actor>Wale Ogunyemi</actor>
    </castItem>
    <castItem>
      <role>Cripple</role>
      <actor>Tunji Oyelana</actor>
    </castItem>
  </castGroup>
  <castItem>
    <role>Si Bero</role>
    <roleDesc>Sister to Dr Bero</roleDesc>
    <actor>Deolo Adedoyin</actor>
  </castItem>
</castList>
```

```

<head rend="braced">Two old women</head>
<castItem>
  <role>Iya Agba</role>
  <actor>Nguba Agolia</actor>
</castItem>
<castItem>
  <role>Iya Mate</role>
  <actor>Bopo George</actor>
</castItem>
</castGroup>
<castItem>
  <role>Dr Bero</role>
  <roleDesc>Specialist</roleDesc>
  <actor>Nat Okoro</actor>
</castItem>
<castItem>
  <role>Priest</role>
  <actor>Gbenga Sonuga</actor>
</castItem>
<castItem>
  <role>The old man</role>
  <roleDesc>Bero's father</roleDesc>
  <actor>Dapo Adelugba</actor>
</castItem>
</castList>
<stage type="mix">The action takes place in and around the home surgery of
Dr Bero, lately returned from the wars.</stage>

```

<catchwords> describes the system used to ensure correct ordering of the quires making up a codex or incunabulum, typically by means of annotations at the foot of the page. [10.3.7.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus
verse: rhyme
May contain
analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula notatedMusic
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo
verse: caesura rhyme
Declaration

element catchwords { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

Example

```
<catchwords>Vertical catchwords in the hand of the scribe placed along  
the inner bounding line, reading from top to bottom.</catchwords>
```

<cb/> (column break) marks the boundary between one column of a text and the next in a standard reference system. [3.10.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.edition (*@ed*, *@edRef*) att.spanning
(*@spanTo*) att.breaking (*@break*)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan
foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def entry etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element cb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Example Markup of an early English dictionary printed in two columns:

```
<pb/>
<cb n="1"/>
<entryFree>
  <form>Well</form>, <sense>a Pit to hold Spring-Water</sense>:
  <sense>In the Art of <hi rend="italic">War</hi>, a Depth the Miner
    sinks into the Ground, to find out and disappoint the Enemies Mines,
    or to prepare one</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>To <form>Welter</form>, <sense>to wallow</sense>, or
<sense>lie groveling</sense>.</entryFree>
<!-- remainder of column -->
<cb n="2"/>
<entryFree>
  <form>Wey</form>, <sense>the greatest Measure for dry Things,
    containing five Chaldron</sense>.
</entryFree>
<entryFree>
  <form>Whale</form>, <sense>the greatest of
    Sea-Fishes</sense>.
</entryFree>
```

Note On this element, the global n attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this <cb> element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the

numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. By convention, the `<cb>` element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.

<cell> contains one cell of a table. [14.1.1.]

Module figures

Attributes *Attributes* `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@style`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change`
(`@change`)) `att.tableDecoration` (`@role`, `@rows`, `@cols`)

Member of

Contained by

figures: row

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element cell
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.tableDecoration.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<row>
  <cell role="label">General conduct</cell>
  <cell role="data">Not satisfactory, on account of his great unpunctuality
    and inattention to duties</cell>
</row>

```

<change> documents a change or set of changes made during the production of a source document, or during the revision of an electronic file. [2.5. 2.4.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.ascribed (@who) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.docStatus (@status) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) @target points to one or more elements that belong to this change.

Status Optional

Datatype 1-∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Member of

header: listChange revisionDesc

msdescription: recordHist

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element change
{
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  macro.specialPara}
}
```

Example

```
<titleStmt>
  <title> ... </title>
  <editor xml:id="LDB">Lou Burnard</editor>
  <respStmt xml:id="BZ">
    <resp>copy editing</resp>
    <name>Brett Zamir</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
<!-- ... -->
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change who="#BZ" when="2008-02-02" status="public">Finished chapter
23</change>
  <change who="#BZ" when="2008-01-02" status="draft">Finished chapter
2</change>
  <change n="P2.2" when="1991-12-21" who="#LDB">Added examples to section
3</change>
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Example

```
<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <listChange>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT1">First draft in pencil</change>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT2" notBefore="1880-12-09">First revision, mostly
using green ink</change>
      <change xml:id="DRAFT3" notBefore="1881-02-13">Final corrections as
supplied to printer.</change>
    </listChange>
  </creation>
</profileDesc>
```

Note The `who` attribute may be used to point to any other element, but will typically specify a `<respStmt>` or `<person>` element elsewhere in the header, identifying the person responsible for the change and their role in making it. It is recommended that changes be recorded with the most recent first. The `status` attribute may be used to indicate the status of a document following the change documented.

<char> (character) provides descriptive information about a character.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@style`, `@xml:space`)

(`att.global.links` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`))

Member of

Contained by

gaiji: `charDecl`

May contain

core: `graphic` `media` `note`

figures: `figure` `formula`

gaiji: `charName` `charProp` `mapping`

textcrit: `witDetail`

Declaration

```
element char
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    charName?,
    model.descLike*,
    charProp*,
    mapping*,
    figure*,
    model.graphicLike*,
    model.noteLike*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<char xml:id="circledU4EBA">
  <charName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</charName>
  <charProp>
    <unicodeName>character-decomposition-mapping</unicodeName>
    <value>circle</value>
  </charProp>
  <charProp>
    <localName>daikanwa</localName>
    <value>36</value>
  </charProp>
  <mapping type="standard">□</mapping>
</char>
```

<charDecl> (character declarations) provides information about nonstandard characters and glyphs.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

gaiji: char glyph

Declaration

```
element charDecl { att.global.attributes, ( desc?, ( char | glyph )+ ) }
```

Example

```
<charDecl>
  <char xml:id="aENL">
    <charName>LATIN LETTER ENLARGED SMALL A</charName>
    <mapping type="standard">a</mapping>
  </char>
</charDecl>
```

<charName> (character name) contains the name of a character, expressed following Unicode conventions.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

gaiji: char

May contain Character data only

Declaration `element charName { att.global.attributes, text }`

Example

```
<charName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</charName>
```

Note The name must follow Unicode conventions for character naming. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of <charName>s to facilitate data exchange.

<charProp> (character property) provides a name and value for some property of the parent character or glyph.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of

Contained by

gaiji: char glyph

May contain

gaiji: localName unicodeName value

Declaration

```
element charProp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( ( unicodeName | localName ), value )
}
```

Example

```
<charProp>
  <unicodeName>character-decomposition-mapping</unicodeName>
  <value>circle</value>
</charProp>
<charProp>
  <localName>daikanwa</localName>
```

```
<value>36</value>
</charProp>
```

Note If the property is a Unicode Normative Property, then its <unicodeName> must be supplied. Otherwise, its name must be specified by means of a <localName>. At a later release, additional constraints will be defined on possible value/name combinations using Schematron rules

<choice> groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text. [3.4.]

Module core

Member of model.pPart.editorial

Contained by

analysis: pc w

core: abbr addrLine author bibl choice citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: abbr choice corr expan orig reg sic unclear

Declaration

```
element choice { ( model.choicePart | choice )* }
```

Example An American encoding of *Gulliver's Travels* which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

```
<p>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above
articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of
meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>
  <sic>1724</sic>
  <corr>1728</corr>
</choice> of our subjects,
with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our
<choice>
```

```
<orig>favour</orig>  
<reg>favor</reg>  
</choice>.</p>
```

Note Because the children of a <choice> element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel. Note also that <choice> elements may self-nest.

Where the purpose of an encoding is to record multiple witnesses of a single work, rather than to identify multiple possible encoding decisions at a given point, the <app> element and associated elements discussed in section 12.1. should be preferred.

<cit> (cited quotation) contains a quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source. In a dictionary it may contain an example text with at least one occurrence of the word form, used in the sense being described, or a translation of the headword, or an example. [3.3.3. 4.3.1. 9.3.5.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.entryPart.top model.quoteLike

Contained by

core: cit corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
filiation foliation layout msItem musicNotation origin provenance source support
surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap gb index lb milestone note pb q quote ref

dictionaries: def etym form gramGrp pos re sense subc superEntry usg xr

figures: notatedMusic

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listRelation relationGrp

textcrit: witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element cit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.qLike      | model.egLike      | model.biblLike
    | model.ptrLike  | model.global    | model.entryPart  )+
}
```

Example

```
<cit>
  <quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such an
insupportable smell,
  as to bring on disorder of the brain.</quote>
  <bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>
</cit>
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>horrifier</orth>
  </form>
  <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
    <quote>to horrify</quote>
  </cit>
  <cit type="example">
    <quote>elle était horrifiée par la dépense</quote>
    <cit type="translation" xml:lang="en">
      <quote>she was horrified at the expense.</quote>
    </cit>
  </cit>
</entry>
```

<citedRange> (cited range) defines the range of cited content, often represented by pages or other units [3.11.2.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

@unit identifies the type of information conveyed by the element, e.g. columns, pages, volume.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **vol** (volume) the element contains a volume number.

issue the element contains an issue number, or volume and issue numbers.

pp (pages) the element contains a page number or page range.

ll (lines) the element contains a line number or line range.

chap (chapter) the element contains a chapter indication (number and/or title)

part the element identifies a part of a book or collection.

@from specifies the starting point of the range of units indicated by the unit attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.word`

@to specifies the end-point of the range of units indicated by the unit attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.word`

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl biblStruct

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element citedRange
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute unit
  {
    "vol" | "issue" | "pp" | "ll" | "chap" | "part" | xsd:Name
  }?,
  attribute from { data.word }?,
  attribute to { data.word }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<citedRange>pp 12–13</citedRange>
<citedRange unit="pp" from="12" to="13"/>

```

```
<citedRange unit="vol">II</citedRange>  
<citedRange unit="pp">12</citedRange>
```

Example

```
<bibl>  
  <ptr target="#mueller01"/>, <citedRange  
    target="http://example.com/mueller3.xml#page4">vol. 3, pp.  
    4-5</citedRange>  
</bibl>
```

<climate> (climate) contains information about the physical climate of a place.

Module names dates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore,
@notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso,
@from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom,
@notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity,
@extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max,
@confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)
(att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.placeStateLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign
head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker
stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth climate country death education faith floruit
forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName
persName place residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct head label note p

header: biblFull

2 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: climate listRelation relationGrp

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element climate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( ( model.pLike+ ) | ( model.labelLike+ ) ),
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike )*,
    climate*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<place xml:id="ROMA">
  <placeName>Rome</placeName>
  <!-- ... -->
  <climate>
    <ab>
      <table>
        <head>24-hr Average Temperature</head>
        <row>
          <cell/>
          <cell role="label">Jan</cell>
          <cell role="label">Jun</cell>
          <cell role="label">Dec</cell>
        </row>
        <row>
          <cell role="label">°C</cell>
          <cell role="data">7.1</cell>
          <cell role="data">21.7</cell>
          <cell role="data">8.3</cell>
        </row>
        <row>
          <cell role="label">°F</cell>
          <cell role="data">44.8</cell>
          <cell role="data">71.1</cell>
          <cell role="data">46.9</cell>
        </row>
      </table>
    </ab>
    <note>Taken from <bibl>
      <abbr>GHCN 2 Beta</abbr>: The Global Historical Climatology Network,
        version 2 beta, 1904 months between 1811 and 1980. <ptr
        target="http://www.worldclimate.com/cgi-
        bin/data.pl?ref=N41E012+1202+0004058G2"/>
      </bibl>
    </note>
  </climate>
</place>
```

<closer> groups together salutations, datelines, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.2. 4.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: epilogue performance prologue

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

textstructure: dateline salute signed

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element closer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | signed      | dateline
    | salute          | model.phrase | model.global  )*
}
```

Example

```
<div type="letter">
  <p> perhaps you will favour me with a sight of it when convenient.</p>
  <closer>
    <salute>I remain, &c. &c.</salute>
    <signed>H. Colburn</signed>
```

```
</closer>  
</div>
```

Example

```
<div type="chapter">  
  <p>  
<!-- .... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will  
  Yes.</p>  
  <closer>  
    <dateline>  
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>  
      <date>1914-1921</date>  
    </dateline>  
  </closer>  
</div>
```

<collation> contains a description of how the leaves or bifolia are physically arranged.
[10.7.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: supportDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element collation { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

Example

```
<collation>The written leaves preceded by an original flyleaf,
conjoint with the pastedown.</collation>
```

Example

```
<collation>
<p>
<formula>1-5.8 6.6 (catchword, f. 46, does not match following text)
7-8.8 9.10, 11.2 (through f. 82) 12-14.8 15.8(-7)</formula>
<catchwords>Catchwords are written horizontally in center
or towards the right lower margin in various manners:
in red ink for quires 1-6 (which are also signed in red
ink with letters of the alphabet and arabic numerals);
quires 7-9 in ink of text within yellow decorated frames;
quire 10 in red decorated frame; quire 12 in ink of text;
quire 13 with red decorative slashes; quire 14 added in
cursive hand.</catchwords>
</p>
</collation>
```

<collection> contains the name of a collection of manuscripts, not necessarily located within a single repository. [10.4.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: altIdentifier msIdentifier

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element collection
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<msIdentifier>
<country>USA</country>
<region>California</region>
<settlement>San Marino</settlement>
<repository>Huntington Library</repository>
<collection>Ellesmere</collection>
```

```
<idno>El 26 C 9</idno>
<msName>The Ellesmere Chaucer</msName>
</msIdentifier>
```

<colophon> contains the *colophon* of a manuscript item: that is, a statement providing information regarding the date, place, agency, or reason for production of the manuscript. [10.6.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.msQuoteLike

Contained by

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

element colophon { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

Example

```
<colophon>Ricardus Franciscus Scripsit Anno Domini  
1447.</colophon>
```

Example

```
<colophon>Explicit expliceat/scriptor ludere eat.</colophon>
```

Example


```
<colophon>Explicit venenum viciorum domini illius, qui comparavit Anno  
domini Millessimo Trecentesimo nonagesimo primo, Sabbato in festo  
sancte Marthe virginis gloriose. Laus tibi criste quia finitur  
libellus iste.</colophon>
```

<condition> contains a description of the physical condition of the manuscript.
[10.7.1.5.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: binding bindingDesc sealDesc supportDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element condition { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

Example

```
<condition>  
<p>There are lacunae in three places in this  
manuscript. After 14v two  
leaves has been cut out and narrow strips leaves remains in the spine.  
After  
68v one gathering is missing and after 101v at least one gathering of 8  
leaves
```

```
has been lost. </p>
<p>Several leaves are damaged with tears or holes or have a
irregular shape. Some of the damages do not allow the lines to be of full
length and they are apparently older than the script. There are tears on
fol.
2r-v, 9r-v, 10r-v, 15r-18v, 19r-v, 20r-22v, 23r-v, 24r-28v, 30r-v,
32r-35v,
37r-v, 38r-v, 40r-43v, 45r-47v, 49r-v, 51r-v, 53r-60v, 67r-v, 68r-v,
70r-v,
74r-80v, 82r-v, 86r-v, 88r-v, 89r-v, 95r-v, 97r-98v 99r-v, 100r-v. On
fol. 98
the corner has been torn off. Several leaves are in a bad condition due
to
moist and wear, and have become dark, bleached or
wrinkled. </p>
<p>The script has been
touched up in the 17th century with black ink. The touching up on the
following
fols. was done by
<name>Bishop Brynjólf Sveinsson</name>: 1v, 3r, 4r, 5r,
6v, 8v,9r, 10r, 14r, 14v, 22r,30v, 36r-52v, 72v, 77r,78r,103r, 104r,. An
AM-note says according to the lawman
<name>Sigurður Björnsson</name> that the rest of the
touching up was done by himself and another lawman
<name>Sigurður Jónsson</name>.
<name>Sigurður Björnsson</name> did the touching up
on the following fols.: 46v, 47r, 48r, 49r-v, 50r, 52r-v.
<name>Sigurður Jónsson</name> did the rest of the
touching up in the section 36r-59r containing
<title>Bretasögur</title>
</p>
</condition>
```

<corr> (correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text. [3.4.1.]

Module core

Member of model.choicePart

Contained by

core: choice

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat

listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration `element corr { macro.paraContent }`

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <corr> may be used alone:

```
I don't know,  
Juan. It's so far in the past now – how <corr>can we</corr> prove  
or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example It is also possible, using the <choice> and <sic> elements, to provide an uncorrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now –  
how <choice>  
  <sic>we can</sic>  
  <corr>can we</corr>  
</choice> prove or  
disprove anyone's theories?
```

<country> (country) contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc. [13.2.3.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed
(@type, @subtype) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when,
@notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso,
@notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom,
@notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint,
@datingMethod))

Member of model.placeNamePart

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign
head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker
stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon
condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit
layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin

provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates
watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation org orgName
persName place residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element country
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<country key="DK">Denmark</country>
```

Note The recommended source for codes to represent coded country names is ISO 3166.

<custEvent> (custodial event) describes a single event during the custodial history of a manuscript. [10.9.1.2.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,

@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: custodialHist

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element custEvent
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<custEvent type="photography">Photographed by David Cooper on <date>12 Dec
1964</date>
</custEvent>
```

<custodialHist> (custodial history) contains a description of a manuscript's custodial history, either as running prose or as a series of dated custodial events. [10.9.1.2.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: adminInfo

May contain

core: p

msdescription: custEvent

Declaration

```
element custodialHist { att.global.attributes, ( model.pLike+ | custEvent+ ) }
```

Example

```
<custodialHist>
  <custEvent type="conservation" notBefore="1961-03" notAfter="1963-
02">Conserved between March 1961 and February 1963 at
  Birgitte Dalls Konserveringsværksted.</custEvent>
  <custEvent type="photography" notBefore="1988-05-01" notAfter="1988-05-
30">Photographed in
  May 1988 by AMI/FA.</custEvent>
  <custEvent type="transfer-dispatch" notBefore="1989-11-
13" notAfter="1989-11-13">Dispatched to Iceland
  13 November 1989.</custEvent>
</custodialHist>
```

<date> contains a date in any format. [3.5.4. 2.2.4. 2.5. 3.11.2.3. 15.2.3. 13.3.6.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.dateable (calendar,
 @period) att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso,
 @to-iso) att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom,
 @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod) att.editLike (evidence,
 source, @instant) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)
 att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)

@when (You must enter a date in ISO format) supplies the value of the date or
 time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Derived from att.dateable.w3c

Status Optional

Datatype data.temporal.iso

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the

W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

@notBefore (You must enter a date in ISO format) specifies the earliest possible
 date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Derived from att.dateable.w3c

Status Optional

Datatype data.temporal.iso

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the
W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

@notAfter (You must enter a date in ISO format) specifies the latest possible
date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Derived from att.dateable.w3c

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.iso`

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the
W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

@from (You must enter a date in ISO format) indicates the starting point of the
period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Derived from att.dateable.w3c

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.iso`

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the
W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

@to (You must enter a date in ISO format) indicates the ending point of the
period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Derived from att.dateable.w3c

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.iso`

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the
W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

Member of model.dateLike model.publicationStmtPart

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
imprint item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker
stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence publicationStmt scriptNote
typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence
roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element date
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.style,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.global.change.attribute.change,
  att.datable.attribute.period,
  att.datable.iso.attribute.when-iso,
  att.datable.iso.attribute.notBefore-iso,
  att.datable.iso.attribute.notAfter-iso,
  att.datable.iso.attribute.from-iso,
  att.datable.iso.attribute.to-iso,
  att.datable.custom.attribute.when-custom,
  att.datable.custom.attribute.notBefore-custom,
  att.datable.custom.attribute.notAfter-custom,
  att.datable.custom.attribute.from-custom,
  att.datable.custom.attribute.to-custom,
  att.datable.custom.attribute.datingPoint,
  att.datable.custom.attribute.datingMethod,
  att.editLike.attribute.instant,
  att.dimensions.attribute.unit,
  att.dimensions.attribute.quantity,
  att.dimensions.attribute.extent,
  att.dimensions.attribute.precision,
  att.dimensions.attribute.scope,
  att.ranging.attribute.atLeast,
  att.ranging.attribute.atMost,
  att.ranging.attribute.min,
  att.ranging.attribute.max,
```



```
att.ranging.attribute.confidence,  
attribute when { data.temporal.iso }?,  
attribute notBefore { data.temporal.iso }?,  
attribute notAfter { data.temporal.iso }?,  
attribute from { data.temporal.iso }?,  
attribute to { data.temporal.iso }?,  
( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*  
}
```

Example

<date when="1980-02">early February 1980</date>

Example

Given on the <date when="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day
of June in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and Seventy-seven
of the Republic
the Two Hundredth and first and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>

Example

<date when="1990-09">September 1990</date>

<dateline> contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer. [4.2.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.divWrapper

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue

figures: table

textstructure: body closer div group opener

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat

location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
 surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
 undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element dateline { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
```

Example

```
<div type="chapter">
  <p>
<!-- ... --> and his heart was going like mad and yes I said yes I will
Yes.</p>
  <closer>
    <dateline>
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
      <date>1914-1921</date>
    </dateline>
  </closer>
</div>
```

<death> (death) contains information about a person's death, such as its date and place.
 [15.2.2.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit,
 @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min,
 @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dateable (@calendar,
 @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
 (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
 (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom,
 @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.naming (@role,
 @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of model.persEventLike

Contained by

namesdates: person personGrp

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo
verse: caesura rhyme
Declaration

```
element death
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<death when="1902-10-01"/>
```

Example

```
<death when="1960-12-10">Passed away near  
<name type="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</name>, after suffering from cerebral  
palsy. </death>
```

<decoDesc> (decoration description) contains a description of the decoration of a manuscript, either as a sequence of paragraphs, or as a sequence of topically organized <decoNote> elements. [10.7.3.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

core: p

msdescription: decoNote summary

Declaration

```
element decoDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

```
( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, decoNote+ ) )
}
```

Example

```
<decoDesc>
  <p>The start of each book of the Bible with a 10-line historiated
    illuminated initial; prefaces decorated with 6-line blue initials with
  red
    penwork flourishing; chapters marked by 3-line plain red initials; verses
    with 1-line initials, alternately blue or red.</p>
</decoDesc>
```

<decoNote> (note on decoration) contains a note describing either a decorative component of a manuscript, or a fairly homogenous class of such components. [10.7.3.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.msItemPart

Contained by

msdescription: binding bindingDesc decoDesc msItem msItemStruct seal sealDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element decoNote
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

att.typed.attributes,
macro.specialPara}

Example

```
<decoDesc>
  <decoNote type="initial">
    <p>The start of each book of the Bible with
      a 10-line historiated illuminated initial;
      prefaces decorated with 6-line blue initials
      with red penwork flourishing; chapters marked by
      3-line plain red initials; verses with 1-line initials,
      alternately blue or red.</p>
    </decoNote>
  </decoDesc>
```

<def> (definition) contains definition text in a dictionary entry. [9.3.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location,
@mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.entryPart model.entryPart.top

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: etym re sense

namesdates: nym

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element def
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>competitor</orth>
    <hyph>com|peti|tor</hyph>
    <pron>k@"petit@(r)</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>n</pos>
  </gramGrp>
  <def>person who competes.</def>
</entry>

```

<delSpan/> (deleted span of text) marks the beginning of a longer sequence of text deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise signaled as superfluous or spurious by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector. [11.3.1.4.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant)) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.spanning (@spanTo)

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element delSpan
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Schematron <s:assert test="@spanTo">The spanTo= attribute of <s:name/> is required.</s:assert>

Schematron <s:assert test="@spanTo">L'attribut spanTo est requis.</s:assert>

Example

```
<p>Paragraph partially deleted. This is the undeleted
portion <delSpan spanTo="#a23"/>and this the deleted
portion of the paragraph.</p>
<p>Paragraph deleted together with adjacent material.</p>
<p>Second fully deleted paragraph.</p>
<p>Paragraph partially deleted; in the middle of this
paragraph the deletion ends and the anchor point marks
the resumption <anchor xml:id="a23"/> of the text. ...</p>
```

Note Both the beginning and ending of the deleted sequence must be marked: the beginning by the <delSpan> element, the ending by the target of the spanTo attribute. The text deleted must be at least partially legible, in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it. If it is not legible at all, the <delSpan> tag should not be used. Rather, the <gap> tag should be employed to signal that text cannot be transcribed, with the value of the reason attribute giving the cause for the omission from the transcription as deletion. If it is not fully legible, the <unclear> element should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence. See further sections 11.3.1.7. and, for the close association of the <delSpan> tag with the <gap>, <damage>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements, 11.3.3.2.. The <delSpan> tag should not be used for deletions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> tag or the <gap> tag should be used.

<depth> contains a measurement measured across the spine of a book or codex, or (for other text-bearing objects) perpendicular to the measurement given by the “width” element. [10.3.4.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change

(@change)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)
 (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))

Member of model.dimLike model.measureLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
 item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
 textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
 custEvent decoNote dimensions explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit
 layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance
 rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
 genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName
 residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element depth { att.global.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

Example

```
<depth unit="in" quantity="4"/>
```

Note If used to specify the width of a non text-bearing portion of some object, for example a monument, this element conventionally refers to the axis facing the observer, and perpendicular to that indicated by the “width” axis.

<dim> contains any single measurement forming part of a dimensional specification of some sort. [10.3.4.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent,
 @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote dimensions explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit
layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element dim
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  macro.xtext}

```

Example

```
<dim type="circumference" extent="4.67 in"/>
```

Note The specific elements <width>, <height>, and <depth> should be used in preference to this generic element wherever appropriate.

<dimensions> contains a dimensional specification. [10.3.4.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)
(att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))

@type indicates which aspect of the object is being measured.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **leaves** dimensions relate to one or more leaves
(e.g. a single leaf, a gathering, or a separately bound part)

ruled dimensions relate to the area of a leaf which has been ruled in preparation for writing.

pricked dimensions relate to the area of a leaf which has been pricked out in preparation for ruling (used where this differs significantly from the ruled area, or where the ruling is not measurable).

written dimensions relate to the area of a leaf which has been written, with the height measured from the top of the minims on the top line of writing, to the bottom of the minims on the bottom line of writing.

miniatures dimensions relate to the miniatures within the manuscript

binding dimensions relate to the binding in which the codex or manuscript is contained

box dimensions relate to the box or other container in which the manuscript is stored.

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

msdescription: depth dim height width

Declaration

```

element dimensions
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( ( dim | model.dimLike )* )
}

```

Schematron <s:report test="count(tei:width) > 1">The element <s:name/> may appear

once only </s:report> <s:report test="count(tei:height)> 1">The element <s:name/> may appear once only </s:report> <s:report test="count(tei:depth)> 1">The element <s:name/> may appear once only </s:report>

Example

```
<dimensions type="leaves">
  <height scope="range">157-160</height>
  <width>105</width>
</dimensions>
<dimensions type="ruled">
  <height scope="most">90</height>
  <width scope="most">48</width>
</dimensions>
<dimensions unit="in">
  <height>12</height>
  <width>10</width>
</dimensions>
```

Example This element may be used to record the dimensions of any text-bearing object, not necessarily a codex. For example:

```
<dimensions type="panels">
  <height scope="all">7004</height>
  <width scope="all">1803</width>
  <dim type="relief" unit="mm">345</dim>
</dimensions>
```

This might be used to show that the inscribed panels on some (imaginary) monument are all the same size (7004 by 1803 cm) and stand out from the rest of the monument by 345 mm.

Example When simple numeric quantities are involved, they may be expressed on the quantity attribute of any or all of the child elements, as in the following example:

```
<dimensions type="leaves">
  <height scope="range">157-160</height>
  <width quantity="105"/>
</dimensions>
<dimensions type="ruled">
  <height unit="cm" scope="most" quantity="90"/>
  <width unit="cm" scope="most" quantity="48"/>
</dimensions>
<dimensions unit="in">
  <height quantity="12"/>
  <width quantity="10"/>
</dimensions>
```

Note Contains no more than one of each of the specialized elements used to express a three-dimensional object's height, width, and depth, combined with any number of other kinds of dimensional specification.

<div> (text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text. [4.1.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.divLike (@part) (att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.divLike

Contained by

textstructure: back body div front

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap gb head index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q
quote sp stage

dictionaries: entry superEntry

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation relationGrp

textcrit: listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript
salute signed trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```

element div
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )+ )
        | (
          ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
          ( ( model.divLike | model.divGenLike ), model.global* )*
        )
      ),
      ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )
}

```

Example

```

<body>
  <div type="part">
    <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
    <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the object,
to repress all
  exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
    <div n="1" type="chapter">
      <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
      <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their object the
greatest
  happiness of the greatest number....</p>
      <div n="1.1" type="section">
        <head>Analysis of Authority</head>

```

```
    <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or influence to
be attached to
    authority ... </p>
</div>
<div n="1.2" type="section">
  <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
  <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy when... </p>
</div>
</div>
</div>
</body>
```

<docAuthor> (document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline). [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue

figures: table

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: back body byline div front group titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

element docAuthor {

```
att.global.attributes,
att.canonical.attributes,
macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart>Travels into Several Remote Nations of the World, in Four
      Parts.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <byline> By <docAuthor>Lemuel Gulliver</docAuthor>, First a Surgeon,
    and then a Captain of several Ships</byline>
</titlePage>
```

Note The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the <docAuthor> element may be used whether the <byline> element is used or not.

<docDate> (document date) contains the date of a document, as given (usually) on a title page. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@when gives the value of the date in standard form, i.e. YYYY-MM-DD.

Status Optional

Datatype data.temporal.w3c

Values a date in one of the formats specified in *XML Schema Part 2:*

Datatypes Second Edition

Note For simple dates, the when attribute should give the Gregorian or proleptic Gregorian date in the form (YYYY-MM-DD) specified by *XML Schema Part 2*.

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue

figures: table

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: back body div docImprint front group titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element docDate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute when { data.temporal.w3c }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, <docDate>1987</docDate>
</docImprint>
```

Note Cf. the general <date> element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications.

<docEdition> (document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element docEdition { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
<docEdition>The Third edition Corrected</docEdition>
```

Note Cf. the <edition> element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

<docImprint> (document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb pubPlace publisher ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

textstructure: docDate

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element docImprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | pubPlace
    | docDate          | publisher        | model.global  )*
```

Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</docImprint>
```

Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

```
<docImprint>
  <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
  Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>,
  at
  <pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
  <name>J. Roberts</name> in
  <pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
  <name>A. Dodd</name> without
  <pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
  and <name>J. Graves</name> in
  <pubPlace>St. James's-street.</pubPlace>
  <date>1722.</date>
</docImprint>
```

Note Cf. the <imprint> element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

<docTitle> (document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: back front titlePage

May contain

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

figures: notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

textstructure: titlePart

2 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element docTitle
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  ( model.global*, ( titlePart, model.global* )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD, VARIOURVM.</titlePart>
  <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

<edition> (edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text. [2.2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element edition { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<edition>First edition <date>Oct 1990</date>
</edition>
<edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
```

<editor> contains a secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc. [3.11.2.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of model.respLike

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

header: seriesStmt titleStmt

msdescription: msItem

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element editor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<editor>Eric Johnson</editor>
<editor role="illustrator">John Tenniel</editor>
```

Note A consistent format should be adopted. Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

<editorialDecl> (editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text. [2.3.3. 2.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.declarable (@default)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

header: normalization

Declaration

```
element editorialDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike | model.editorialDeclPart )+
}
```

Example

```
<editorialDecl>
  <normalization>
    <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using
      Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary
    </p>
  </normalization>
  <quotation marks="all">
    <p>All opening quotation marks converted to " all closing
      quotation marks converted to &cdq;.</p>
  </quotation>
</editorialDecl>
```

<education> contains a description of the educational experience of a person. [15.2.2.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom,

(@from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of model.persStateLike

Contained by

namesdates: person personGrp

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element education
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<education>Left school at age 16</education>
<education notBefore="1986-01-01" notAfter="1990-06-30">Attended
<name>Cherwell School</name>
</education>
```

<emph> (emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect. [3.3.2.2. 3.3.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

2 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence
roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

<code>element emph { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }</code>
--

Example

You took the car and did **<emph>what</emph>?!!**

Example

```
<q>What it all comes to is this,</q> he said.  
<q>  
  <emph>What  
    does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?</emph>  
</q>
```

<encodingDesc> (encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived. [2.3. 2.1.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of model.teiHeaderPart

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain

core: p

gaiji: charDecl

header: editorialDecl listPrefixDef styleDefDecl

textcrit: variantEncoding

Declaration

```
element encodingDesc  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  ( ( model.encodingDescPart | model.pLike )+ )  
}
```

Example

```
<encodingDesc>  
  <p>Basic encoding, capturing lexical information only. All  
    hyphenation, punctuation, and variant spellings normalized. No  
    formatting or layout information preserved.</p>  
</encodingDesc>
```

<entry> contains a single structured entry in any kind of lexical resource, such as a dictionary or lexicon. [9.1. 9.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.entryLike (*@type*) att.sortable (*@sortKey*)

Member of model.entryLike

Contained by

dictionaries: superEntry

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue set

figures: figure

textstructure: body div epigraph postscript

May contain

core: cb gb lb milestone pb

dictionaries: form sense usg

linking: anchor

Declaration

```

element entry
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.entryLike.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  ( model.milestoneLike*, usg*, form, sense )
}

```

Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>disproof</orth>
    <pron>dIs"pru:f</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>n</pos>
  </gramGrp>
  <sense n="1">
    <def>facts that disprove something.</def>
  </sense>
  <sense n="2">
    <def>the act of disproving.</def>
  </sense>
</entry>

```

Note Like all elements, <entry> inherits an xml:id attribute from the class *global*. No restrictions are placed on the method used to construct xml:ids; one convenient method is to use the orthographic form of the headword, appending a disambiguating number where necessary. Identification codes are sometimes included on machine-readable tapes of dictionaries for in-house use.

<epigraph> contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start or end of a section or on a title page. [4.2.3. 4.2. 4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change))

Member of model.divWrapper model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue

figures: table

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: back body div front group opener titlePage

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap gb index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

dictionaries: entry superEntry

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation relationGrp

textcrit: listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element epigraph { att.global.attributes, ( model.common | model.global )* }
```

Example

```
<epigraph xml:lang="la">
  <cit>
    <bibl>Lucret.</bibl>
    <quote>
      <l part="F">petere inde coronam,</l>
      <l>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</l>
    </quote>
  </cit>
</epigraph>
```

<epilogue> contains the epilogue to a drama, typically spoken by an actor out of character, possibly in association with a particular performance or venue. [7.1.2. 7.1.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.frontPart.drama

Contained by

textstructure: back front

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap gb head index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

dictionaries: entry superEntry

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: msDesc
namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation relationGrp
textcrit: listApp listWit witDetail
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute
 signed trailer
transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin
Declaration

```

element epilogue
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<epilogue>
  <head>Written by <name>Colley Cibber, Esq</name> and spoken by <name>Mrs.
  Cibber</name>
</head>
<sp>
  <lg type="couplet">
    <l>Since Fate has robb'd me of the hapless Youth,</l>
    <l>For whom my heart had hoarded up its truth;</l>
  </lg>
  <lg type="couplet">
    <l>By all the Laws of Love and Honour, now,</l>
    <l>I'm free again to chuse, – and one of you</l>
  </lg>
  <lg type="triplet">
    <l>Suppose I search the sober Gallery; – No,</l>
    <l>There's none but Prentices – & Cuckolds all a row:</l>
    <l>And these, I doubt, are those that make 'em so.</l>
  </lg>
  <stage type="business">Pointing to the Boxes.</stage>
  <lg type="couplet">
    <l>'Tis very well, enjoy the jest:</l>
  </lg>
</sp>
</epilogue>

```

Note Contains optional headings, a sequence of one or more component-level elements, and an optional sequence of closing material.

<etym> (etymology) encloses the etymological information in a dictionary entry. [9.3.4.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change

(@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.entryPart model.entryPart.top

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: re sense

namesdates: nym

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index label lb list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

dictionaries: def gen usg xr

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element etym
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter
    | usg              | lbl              | def              | model.morphLike  | xr              | model.global    )*
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>publish</orth> ... </form>
  <etym>
    <lang>ME.</lang>
    <mentioned>publisshen</mentioned>,
    <lang>F.</lang>
    <mentioned>publier</mentioned>, <lang>L.</lang>
    <mentioned>publicare,
    publicatum</mentioned>. <xr>See <ref>public</ref>; cf. 2d
```

```

<ref>-ish</ref>.</xr>
  </etym>
</entry> (From: Webster's Second International)

```

Note May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set. There is no consensus on the internal structure of etymologies, or even on whether such a structure is appropriate. The <etym> element accordingly simply contains prose, within which names of languages, cited words, or parts of words, glosses, and examples will typically be prominent. The tagging of such internal objects is optional.

<event> (event) contains data relating to any kind of significant event associated with a person, place, or organization.

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore,
 @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso,
 @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom,
 @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
 att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity,
 @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max,
 @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)
 att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.sortable (@sortKey)
 @where indicates the location of an event by pointing to a <place> element
Status Optional
Datatype data.pointer

Member of model.persEventLike model.placeEventLike

Contained by

namesdates: event listEvent person personGrp place

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct head label note p

header: biblFull

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: event listRelation relationGrp

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```

element event
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute where { data.pointer }?,
  (
    model.headLike*,

```

```
( ( model.pLike+ ) | ( model.labelLike+ ) ),  
( model.noteLike | model.biblLike | linkGrp | link )*,  
event*  
)  
}
```

Example

```
<person>  
  <event type="mat" when="1972-10-12">  
    <label>matriculation</label>  
  </event>  
  <event type="grad" when="1975-06-23">  
    <label>graduation</label>  
  </event>  
</person>
```

<expan> (expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation. [3.5.5.]

Module core

Member of model.choicePart

Contained by

core: choice

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration element expan { macro.phraseSeq }

Example

```
The address is Southmoor <choice>  
  <expan>Road</expan>  
  <abbr>Rd</abbr>  
</choice>
```

Example

```
<expan xml:lang="la">
  <abbr>Imp</abbr>
  <ex>erator</ex>
</expan>
```

Note The content of this element should usually be a complete word or phrase. The <ex> element provided by the *transcr* module may be used to mark up sequences of letters supplied within such an expansion.

<explicit> contains the *explicit* of a manuscript item, that is, the closing words of the text proper, exclusive of any rubric or colophon which might follow it. [10.6.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.msExcerpt (@defective)

Member of model.msQuoteLike

Contained by

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element explicit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<explicit>sed libera nos a malo.</explicit>
<rubric>Hic explicit oratio qui dicitur dominica.</rubric>
<explicit type="defective">ex materia quasi et forma sibi
proporti<gap/>
</explicit>
<explicit type="reverse">saued be shulle that doome of day the at
</explicit>
```

<extent> describes the approximate size of a text stored on some carrier medium or of some other object, digital or non-digital, specified in any convenient units. [2.2.3. 2.2. 3.11.2.3. 10.7.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

header: biblFull fileDesc

msdescription: supportDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

element extent { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

Example

```

<extent>3200 sentences</extent>
<extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent>
<extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>

```

<f> (feature) represents a *feature value specification*, that is, the association of a name with a value of any of several different types. [18.2.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)

@name a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>), providing a name for the feature.

Status Required

Datatype data.name

Values Any name.

@fVal (feature value) references any element which can be used to represent the value of a feature.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Values the identifier of an element representing a feature value

Note If this attribute is supplied as well as content, the value referenced is to be unified with that contained.

Members contained by

iso-fs: fLib fs

May contain

gaiji: g

iso-fs: fs symbol

Declaration

```

element f
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datcat.attributes,
  attribute name { data.name },
  attribute fVal { data.pointer }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.featureVal )*
}

```

Schematron <s:rule context="tei:fVal"> <s:assert test="not(tei:* and text)"> A feature value cannot contain both text and element content</s:assert></s:rule>

<s:rule context="tei:fVal"> <s:report test="count(tei:*)>1"> A feature value can contain only one child element</s:report></s:rule>

Example


```
<f name="gender">
  <symbol value="feminine"/>
</f>
```

Example

```
<fs>
  <f name="voice">active</f>
  <f name="tense">SimPre</f>
</fs>
```

Note If the element is empty then a value must be supplied for the fVal attribute. The content of <f> may also be textual, with the assumption that the data type of the feature value is determined by the schema—this is the approach used in many language-technology-oriented projects and recommendations.

<fLib> (feature library) assembles a library of feature elements. [18.4.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

iso-fs: f

Declaration

```
element fLib { att.global.attributes, f+ }
```

Example

```
<fLib n="agreement features">
  <f xml:id="pers1" name="person">
    <symbol value="first"/>
  </f>
  <f xml:id="pers2" name="person">
    <symbol value="second"/>
  </f>
  <!-- ... -->
  <f xml:id="nums" name="number">
    <symbol value="singular"/>
  </f>
  <f xml:id="nump" name="number">
    <symbol value="plural"/>
  </f>
  <!-- ... -->
</fLib>
```

Note The global *n* attribute may be used to supply an informal name to categorize the library's contents.

<faith> specifies the faith, religion, or belief set of a person.

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit,
 @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min,
 @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dataable (@calendar,
 @period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
 (att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
 (att.dataable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom,
 @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.canonical (@key,
 @ref)

Member of model.persStateLike

Contained by

namesdates: person personGrp

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element faith
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<faith>protestant</faith>
```

Example

```
<faith ref="http://dbpedia.org/page/Manichaeism">Manichaeism</faith>
```

<figDesc> (description of figure) contains a brief prose description of the appearance or content of a graphic figure, for use when documenting an image without displaying it. [14.4.]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

figures: figure

May contain

core: address bibl biblStruct choice cit date emph foreign hi label list q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: listApp listWit

Declaration

```
element figDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.limitedContent }
```

Example

```
<figure>
  <graphic url="emblem1.png"/>
  <head>Emblemi d'Amore</head>
  <figDesc>A pair of naked winged cupids, each holding a
    flaming torch, in a rural setting.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Note This element is intended for use as an alternative to the content of its parent `<figure>` element; for example, to display when the image is required but the equipment in use cannot display graphic images. It may also be used for indexing or documentary purposes.

<figure> groups elements representing or containing graphic information such as an illustration, formula, or figure. [14.4.]

Module figures

Member of model.divPart model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: item note q quote stage

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue set view

figures: figure

gaiji: char glyph

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
filiation foliation layout msItem musicNotation origin provenance source support
surrogates

textstructure: body div epigraph postscript titlePage

transcr: metamark

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap gb graphic head index l label lb lg list media milestone
note p pb q quote sp stage

dictionaries: entry superEntry

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figDesc figure formula notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation relationGrp

textcrit: listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: closer postscript signed trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element figure
{
  (
    model.headLike | model.common | figDesc
    | model.graphicLike | model.global | model.divBottomPart )*
```

Example

```
<figure>
  <head>The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
  foreground, and a
  series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
  <graphic url="http://www.example.org/fig1.png" scale="0.5"/>
</figure>
```

<fileDesc> (file description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file. [2.2. 2.1.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global analytic (@ana)) (att.global facs (@facs)) (att.global change
(@change))

Member of

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain

header: extent notesStmt publicationStmt seriesStmt sourceDesc titleStmt

Declaration

```
element fileDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      titleStmt,
      editionStmt?,
      extent?,
      publicationStmt,
      seriesStmt?,
      notesStmt?
    ),
    sourceDesc+
  )
}
```

Example

```
<fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The shortest possible TEI document</title>
  </titleStmt>
```

```
<publicationStmt>
  <p>Distributed as part of TEI P5</p>
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>
  <p>No print source exists: this is an original digital text</p>
</sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
```

Note The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

<filiation> contains information concerning the manuscript's *filiation*, i.e. its relationship to other surviving manuscripts of the same text, its *protographs*, *antigraphs* and *apographs*. [10.6.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.msItemPart

Contained by

msdescription: msItem

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element filiation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```
<msContents>
  <msItem>
    <title>Beljakovski sbornik</title>
    <filiation type="protograph">Bulgarian</filiation>
    <filiation type="antigraph">Middle Bulgarian</filiation>
    <filiation type="apograph">
      <ref target="#DN17">Dujchev N 17</ref>
    </filiation>
  </msItem>
</msContents>
<!-- ... -->
<msDesc xml:id="DN17">
  <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Faraway</settlement>
  </msIdentifier>
<!-- ... -->
</msDesc>
```

In this example, the reference to “Dujchev N17” includes a link to some other manuscript description which has the identifier **DN17**.

Example

```
<msItem>
  <title>Guan-ben</title>
  <filiation>
    <p>The "Guan-ben" was widely current among mathematicians in the
    Qing dynasty, and "Zhao Qimei version" was also read. It is
    therefore difficult to know the correct filiation path to follow.
    The study of this era is much indebted to Li Di. We explain the
    outline of his conclusion here. Kong Guangsen
    (1752-1786)(17) was from the same town as Dai Zhen, so he obtained
    "Guan-ben" from him and studied it(18). Li Huang (d. 1811)
    (19) took part in editing Si Ku Quan Shu, so he must have had
    "Guan-ben". Then Zhang Dunren (1754-1834) obtained this version,
    and studied "Da Yan Zong Shu Shu" (The General Dayan
    Computation). He wrote Jiu Yi Suan Shu (Mathematics
    Searching for One, 1803) based on this version of Shu Xue Jiu
    Zhang (20).</p>
    <p>One of the most important persons in restoring our knowledge
    concerning the filiation of these books was Li Rui (1768(21)
    -1817)(see his biography). ... only two volumes remain of this
    manuscript, as far as chapter 6 (chapter 3 part 2) p.13, that is,
    question 2 of "Huan Tian San Ji" (square of three loops),
    which later has been lost.</p>
  </filiation>
</msItem>
<!--http://www2.nkfust.edu.tw/ jochi/ed1.htm-->
```

<finalRubric> contains the string of words that denotes the end of a text division, often with an assertion as to its author and title, usually set off from the text itself

by red ink, by a different size or type of script, or by some other such visual device.
[10.6.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.msQuoteLike

Contained by

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element finalRubric
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<finalRubric>Explicit le romans de la Rose ou l'art
d'amours est toute enclose.</finalRubric>
<finalRubric>ok lúkv ver þar Brennu-Nials savgv</finalRubric>

```

<floruit> contains information about a person's period of activity.

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) att.dateable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.dateable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*,
@notAfter, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.dateable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*,

@from-iso, @to-iso) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod*))
att.editLike (*@evidence, @source, @instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence*))) (att.responsibility (*@cert, @resp*))

Member of model.persStateLike

Contained by

namesdates: person personGrp

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element floruit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<floruit notBefore="1066" notAfter="1100"/>
```

<foliation> describes the numbering system or systems used to count the leaves or pages in a codex. [10.7.1.4.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: supportDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

<code>element foliation { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }</code>

Example

```
<foliation>Contemporary foliation in red  
roman numerals in the centre  
of the outer margin.</foliation>
```

<foreign> (foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text. [3.3.2.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*))

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence
roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

<code>element foreign { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }</code>

Example

```
This is  
heathen Greek to you still? Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis  
philosophicus</foreign>?
```

Note The global xml:lang attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere, its value should be a language tag as defined in 6.1..This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global xml:lang attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element. The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

<forename> contains a forename, given or baptismal name. [13.2.1.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) att.personal (*@full*, *@sort*) (att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*)) (att.canonical
(*@key*, *@ref*))) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.persNamePart

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign
head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker
stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element forename
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<persName>
  <roleName>Ex-President</roleName>
  <forename>George</forename>
  <surname>Bush</surname>
</persName>
```

<form> (form information group) groups all the information on the written and spoken forms of one headword. [9.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

@type classifies form as lemma (line), headword or simple.

Status Required

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Legal values are: **lemma** (lemma, containing the headword)

headword (the headword itself)

simple (single free lexical item)

Member of model.entryPart model.entryPart.top model.formPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: entry form re sense

namesdates: nym

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index label lb list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

dictionaries: form gen gramGrp pos subc usg

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element form
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type { "lemma" | "headword" | "simple" },
  (
    (
      text
      | model.gLike      | model.phrase
      | model.inter      | model.formPart      | model.global    )*)
  )
}

```

Example

```

<form>
  <orth>zaptié</orth>
  <orth>zaptyé</orth>
</form>

```

(from TLFi)

<formula> contains a mathematical or other formula. [14.2.]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

@notation (The notation used to express this formula) names the notation used
for the content of the element.

Status Required

Datatype data.enumerated

Member of model.graphicLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item
l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figure formula table

gaiji: char glyph

header: change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName
sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: graphic hi media

figures: formula

Declaration

```
element formula
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute notation { data.enumerated },
  ( text | model.graphicLike | model.hiLike ) *
}
```

Example

```
<formula notation="tex">$E=mc^2</formula>
```

Example

```
<formula notation="none">E=mc<hi rend="sup">2</hi>
</formula>
```

Example

```
<formula notation="mathml">
  <m:math>
    <m:mi>E</m:mi>
    <m:mo>=</m:mo>
    <m:mi>c</m:mi>
    <m:msup>
      <m:mrow>
        <m:mi>c</m:mi>
      </m:mrow>
      <m:mrow>
        <m:mn>2</m:mn>
      </m:mrow>
    </m:msup>
  </m:math>
</formula>
```

<front> (front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body. [4.6. 4.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change))

Member of

Contained by

textstructure: text

May contain

core: cb gap gb head index lb milestone note pb

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue set

figures: notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

textstructure: byline closer div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle
 epigraph postscript signed titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```

element front
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.frontPart | model.pLike.front | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( model.div1Like ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.div1Like | model.global )*
      )
      | (
        ( model.divLike ),
        ( model.frontPart | model.divLike | model.global )*
      )
    )?
  ),
  ( ( ( model.divBottomPart ), ( model.divBottomPart | model.global )* )? )
}

```

Example

```

<front>
  <epigraph>
    <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis
      vidi in ampulla pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent:
    <q xml:lang="grc">Sibylla ti weleis</q>; respondebat
      illa: <q xml:lang="grc">apowanein welo.</q>
    </quote>
  </epigraph>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>For Ezra Pound <q xml:lang="it">il miglior fabbro.</q>
    </p>
  </div>
</front>

```

Example


```

<front>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>To our three selves</p>
  </div>
  <div type="preface">
    <head>Author's Note</head>
    <p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the
      author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons
      she has done so inadvertently.
      ...</p>
  </div>
</front>

```

<fs> (feature structure) represents a *feature structure*, that is, a collection of feature-value pairs organized as a structural unit. [18.2.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global-linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global-analytic (@ana)) (att.global-facs (@facs)) (att.global-change
 (@change)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)

@type specifies the type of the feature structure.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

@feats (features) references the feature-value specifications making up this feature structure.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by
 whitespace

Values one or more identifiers of <f> elements.

Note May be used either instead of having features as content, or in
 addition. In the latter case, the features referenced and contained
 are unified.

Member of model.featureVal.complex model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan
 foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
 reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue
 role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

iso-fs: f

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
 material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance
 rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

iso-fs: f

Declaration

```

element fs
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datcat.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute feats { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  f*
}

```

Example

```

<fs type="agreement_structure">
  <f name="person">
    <symbol value="third"/>
  </f>
  <f name="number">
    <symbol value="singular"/>
  </f>
</fs>

```

<g> (character or glyph) represents a glyph, or a non-standard character. [5.]

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@ref points to a description of the character or glyph intended.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Values a pointer to some another element.

Member of model.gLike

Contained by

analysis: c pc w

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell

gaiji: mapping value

header: change edition extent handNote idno licence scriptNote typeNote

iso-fs: f

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation collection colophon
condition custEvent decoNote depth dim explicit filiation finalRubric foliation height
heraldry incipit institution layout locus material msName musicNotation objectType
origDate origPlace origin provenance repository rubric secFol signatures source
stamp summary support surrogates watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName geogFeat nameLink nationality occupation offset orgName persName
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```
element g
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute ref { data.pointer }?,
  text
}
```

Example

```
<g ref="#ctlig">ct</g>
```

This example points to a <glyph> element with the identifier **ctlig** like the following:

```
<glyph xml:id="ctlig">
<!-- here we describe the particular ct-ligature intended -->
</glyph>
```

Example

```
<g ref="#per-glyph">per</g>
```

The medieval brevigraeph **per** could similarly be considered as an individual glyph, defined in a <glyph> element with the identifier **per** like the following:

```
<glyph xml:id="per-glyph">
<!-- ... -->
</glyph>
```

Note The name **g** is short for *gaiji*, which is the Japanese term for a non-standardized character or glyph.

<gap> (gap) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible, invisible, or inaudible. [3.4.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@source*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) (att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

@reason gives the reason for omission. Sample values include sampling, inaudible, irrelevant, cancelled.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values any short indication of the reason for the omission.

@hand in the case of text omitted from the transcription because of deliberate deletion by an identifiable hand, signifies the hand which made the deletion.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values must point to a hand identifier typically but not necessarily declared in the document header (see section 11.3.2.1.).

@agent In the case of text omitted because of damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke damage results from smoke

Member of model.global.edit

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element gap
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute reason { list { data.word+ } }?,
  attribute hand { data.pointer }?,
  attribute agent { data.enumerated }?,
  ( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}
```

Example

```
<gap quantity="4" unit="chars" reason="illegible"/>
```

Example

```
<gap quantity="1" unit="essay" reason="sampling"/>
```

Example

```
<del>
  <gap
    atLeast="4"
    atMost="8"
    unit="chars"
    reason="illegible"/>
</del>
```

Example

```
<gap extent="unknown" unit="lines" reason="lost"/>
```

Note The <gap>, <unclear>, and core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section 11.3.3.2. for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance. The <gap> tag simply signals the editors decision to omit or inability to transcribe a span of text. Other information, such as the interpretation that text was deliberately erased or covered, should be indicated using the relevant tags, such as in the case of deliberate deletion.

<gb/> (gathering begins) marks the point in a transcribed codex at which a new gathering or quire begins. [3.10.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)

(att.global-linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,

@select) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.spanning (*@spanTo*) att.breaking (*@break*)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def entry etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```

element gb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}

```

Example

```

<gb n="iii"/>
<pb n="2r"/>
<!-- material from page 2 recto of gathering iii here -->
<pb n="2v"/>
<!-- material from page 2 verso of gathering iii here -->

```

Note By convention, <gb> elements should appear at the start of the first page in the gathering. The global n attribute indicates the number or other value used to identify this gathering in a collation. The type attribute may be used to further characterize the gathering in any respect.

<gen> (gender) identifies the morphological gender of a lexical item, as given in the dictionary. [9.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.morphLike

Contained by

dictionaries: etym form gramGrp

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element gen
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>pamplemousse</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>noun</pos>
    <gen>masculine</gen>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>
```

Note May contain character data and phrase-level elements. Typical content will be *masculine, feminine, neuter* etc. This element is synonymous with `<gram type="gender">`.

<genName> (generational name component) contains a name component used to distinguish otherwise similar names on the basis of the relative ages or generations of the persons named. [13.2.1.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@style`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) `att.personal` (`@full`, `@sort`) (`att.naming` (`@role`, `@nymRef`) (`att.canonical` (`@key`, `@ref`))) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`)

Member of model.persNamePart

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat

location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element genName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<persName>
  <forename>Charles</forename>
  <genName>II</genName>
</persName>
```

Example

```
<persName>
  <surName>Pitt</surName>
  <genName>the Younger</genName>
</persName>
```

<geo> (geographical coordinates) contains any expression of a set of geographic coordinates, representing a point, line, or area on the surface of the earth in some notation. [13.3.4.1.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.measureLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Character data only

Declaration

element geo { att.global.attributes, text }

Example

```
<geoDecl xml:id="WGS" datum="WGS84">World Geodetic System</geoDecl>
<geoDecl xml:id="OS" datum="OSGB36">Ordnance Survey</geoDecl>
<!-- .... -->
<location>
  <desc>A tombstone plus six lines of
    Anglo-Saxon text, built into the west tower (on the south side
    of the archway, at 8 ft. above the ground) of the
    Church of St. Mary-le-Wigford in Lincoln. </desc>
  <geo decls="#WGS">53.226658 -0.541254</geo>
  <geo decls="#OS">SK 97481 70947</geo>
</location>
```

Example

```
<geo>41.687142 -74.870109</geo>
```

Note Uses of <geo> can be associated with a coordinate system, defined by a <geoDecl> element supplied in the TEI Header, using the decls attribute. If no such link is made, the assumption is that the content of each <geo> element will be a pair of numbers separated by whitespace, to be interpreted as latitude followed by longitude according to the World Geodetic System.

<geogFeat> (geographical feature name) contains a common noun identifying some geographical feature contained within a geographic name, such as valley, mount, etc. [13.2.3.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed
(@type, @subtype) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when,
@notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso,
@notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom,
@notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint,
@datingMethod))

Member of model.offsetLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign

head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker
stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation org orgName
persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element geogFeat
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.xtext}

```

Example

```
<geogName> The <geogFeat>vale</geogFeat> of White Horse</geogName>
```

<glyph> (character glyph) provides descriptive information about a character glyph.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

gaiji: charDecl

May contain

core: graphic media note

figures: figure formula

gaiji: charProp glyphName mapping

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element glyph
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    glyphName?,
    model.descLike*,
    charProp*,
    mapping*,
    figure*,
    model.graphicLike*,
    model.noteLike*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<glyph xml:id="rstroke">
  <glyphName>LATIN SMALL LETTER R WITH A FUNNY STROKE</glyphName>
  <charProp>
    <localName>entity</localName>
    <value>rstroke</value>
  </charProp>
  <figure>
    <graphic url="glyph-rstroke.png"/>
  </figure>
</glyph>
```

<glyphName> (character glyph name) contains the name of a glyph, expressed following Unicode conventions for character names.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

gaiji: glyph

May contain Character data only

Declaration `element glyphName { att.global.attributes, text }`

Example

```
<glyphName>CIRCLED IDEOGRAPH 4EBA</glyphName>
```

Note For characters of non-ideographic scripts, a name following the conventions for Unicode names should be chosen. For ideographic scripts, an *Ideographic Description Sequence* (IDS) as described in Chapter 10.1 of the Unicode Standard is recommended where possible. Projects working in similar fields are recommended to coordinate and publish their list of <glyphName>s to facilitate data exchange.

<gramGrp> (grammatical information group) groups morpho-syntactic information about a lexical item, e.g. <pos>, <gen>, <number>, <case>, or <iType> (inflectional class). [9.3.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.entryPart model.entryPart.top model.gramPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: form gramGrp re sense

namesdates: nym

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index label lb list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

dictionaries: gen gramGrp pos subc usg

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element gramGrp
{
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  pos,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter
    | model.gramPart  | model.global    )*
```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>luire</orth>
  </form>
</gramGrp>
```

```

    <pos>verb</pos>
    <subc>intransitive</subc>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>

```

<graphic> indicates the location of an inline graphic, illustration, or figure. [3.9.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.internetMedia (@mimeType)

@url (The notation used to express this formula) specifies the URL from which
 the media concerned may be obtained.

Derived from att.resourced

Status Required

Datatype data.pointer

Member of model.graphicLike model.titlepagePart

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item
 l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
 textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: char glyph

header: change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
 material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance
 rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation birth country death education faith floruit forename
 genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName
 sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```

element graphic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.internetMedia.attribute.mimeType,
  attribute url { data.pointer },

```

```
    model.descLike*
  }
```

Example

```
<figure>
  <graphic url="fig1.png"/>
  <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
  foreground, and a
    series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Note The mimeType attribute should be used to supply the MIME media type of the image specified by the url attribute.

<group> contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc. [4. 4.3.1. 15.1.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

textstructure: group text

May contain

core: cb gap gb head index lb milestone note pb

figures: notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph group opener postscript salute signed text trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element group
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( text | group ), ( text | group | model.global )* ),
    model.divBottom*
  )
}
```

Example

```

<text>
<!-- Section on Alexander Pope starts -->
  <front>
<!-- biographical notice by editor -->
  </front>
  <group>
    <text>
<!-- first poem -->
    </text>
    <text>
<!-- second poem -->
    </text>
  </group>
</text>
<!-- end of Pope section-->

```

<handDesc> (description of hands) contains a description of all the different kinds of writing used in a manuscript. [10.7.2.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change))

@hands specifies the number of distinct hands identified within the manuscript

Status Optional

Datatype data.count

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

core: p

header: handNote

msdescription: summary

Declaration

```

element handDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute hands { data.count }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, handNote+ ) )
}

```

Example

```

<handDesc>
  <handNote scope="major">Written throughout in <term>angelicana
  formata</term>.</handNote>
</handDesc>

```

Example


```
<handDesc hands="2">
  <p>The manuscript is written in two contemporary hands, otherwise
    unknown, but clearly those of practised scribes. Hand I writes
    ff. 1r-22v and hand II ff. 23 and 24. Some scholars, notably
    Verner Dahlerup and Hreinn Benediktsson, have argued for a third hand
    on f. 24, but the evidence for this is insubstantial.</p>
</handDesc>
```

<handNote> (note on hand) describes a particular style or hand distinguished within a manuscript. [10.7.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: handDesc

transcr: handNotes

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element handNote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.handFeatures.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<handNote scope="sole">
  <p>Written in insular phase II half-uncial with interlinear Old English
  gloss in an
  Anglo-Saxon pointed minuscule.</p>
</handNote>
```

<handNotes> contains one or more <handNote> elements documenting the different hands identified within the source texts. [11.3.2.1.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change))

Member of model.profileDescPart

Contained by

header: profileDesc

May contain

header: handNote

Declaration

<pre>element handNotes { att.global.attributes, handNote+ }</pre>

Example

```
<handNotes>
  <handNote xml:id="H1" script="copperplate" medium="brown-ink">Carefully
  written with regular descenders</handNote>
  <handNote xml:id="H2" script="print" medium="pencil">Unschool
  ed scrawl</handNote>
</handNotes>
```

<head> (heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc. [4.2.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.headLike model.pLike.front

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castGroup castList epilogue performance prologue set spGrp

figures: figure table

msdescription: msDesc msPart

namesdates: climate event listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace org place
 population terrain trait

textcrit: listApp listWit
textstructure: back body div front group postscript
May contain
analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: formula notatedMusic table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait
textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo
verse: caesura rhyme
Declaration

```
element head
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | lg | model.gLike | model.phrase
    | model.inter | model.lLike | model.global )*
}
```

Example The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or *incipits* may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

```
<div1 n="I" type="book">
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins the first book of the
ecclesiastical history of
  Georgius Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>
  <div2 type="section">
    <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the history.</head>
    <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>
    <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin four
hundred and twelve
      years passed.</p>
    <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand, five
hundred and ninety-six
      years from the beginning of the world down to the death of Saint
Martin.</trailer>
```

```
</div2>  
</div1>
```

Example The <head> element is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```
With a few exceptions, connectives are equally  
useful in all kinds of discourse: description, narration, exposition,  
argument. <list type="simple">  
  <head>Connectives</head>  
  <item>above</item>  
  <item>accordingly</item>  
  <item>across from</item>  
  <item>adjacent to</item>  
  <item>again</item>  
  <item>  
<!-- ... -->  
  </item>  
</list>
```

Note The <head> element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a <head> element based on its structural position. A <head> occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a <div1> is the title of that chapter or section.

<height> contains a measurement measured along the axis at right angles to the bottom of the written surface, i.e. parallel to the spine for a codex or book. [10.3.4.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)
(att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))

Member of model.dimLike model.measureLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote dimensions explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit
layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element height
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dimensions.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<height unit="in" quantity="7"/>
```

Note If used to specify the height of a non text-bearing portion of some object, for example a monument, this element conventionally refers to the axis perpendicular to the surface of the earth.

<heraldry> contains a heraldic formula or phrase, typically found as part of a blazon, coat of arms, etc. [10.3.8.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item
l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence
roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

element heraldry { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

Example

```
<p>Ownership stamp (xvii cent.) on i recto with the arms  
<heraldry>A bull passant within a bordure bezanty,  
in chief a crescent for difference</heraldry> [Cole],  
crest, and the legend <q>Cole Deum</q>.</p>
```

<hi> (highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made. [3.3.2.2. 3.3.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*))

Member of model.hiLike

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc formula

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence
roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element hi { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>  
that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,  
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...
```

<history> groups elements describing the full history of a manuscript or manuscript
part. [10.8.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,

@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: msDesc msPart

May contain

core: p

msdescription: acquisition origin provenance summary

Declaration

```
element history
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, origin?, provenance*, acquisition? ) )
}
```

Example

```
<history>
  <origin>
    <p>Written in Durham during the mid twelfth
      century.</p>
  </origin>
  <provenance>
    <p>Recorded in two medieval
      catalogues of the books belonging to Durham Priory, made in 1391 and
      1405.</p>
  </provenance>
  <provenance>
    <p>Given to W. Olleyf by William Ebchester, Prior (1446-56)
      and later belonged to Henry Dalton, Prior of Holy Island (Lindisfarne)
      according to inscriptions on ff. 4v and 5.</p>
  </provenance>
  <acquisition>
    <p>Presented to Trinity College in 1738 by
      Thomas Gale and his son Roger.</p>
  </acquisition>
</history>
```

<idno> (identifier) supplies any form of identifier used to identify some object, such as a bibliographic item, a person, a title, an organization, etc. in a standardized way.
[2.2.4. 2.2.5. 3.11.2.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

@type categorizes the identifier, for example as an ISBN, Social Security number,
etc.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Member of model.nameLike model.personPart model.publicationStmntPart

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl biblStruct citedRange corr date editor emph
expan foreign head hi item l label monogr note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote idno licence publicationStmt
scriptNote seriesStmt typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon
condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit
layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin
provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates
watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName
person personGrp place residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

gaiji: g

header: idno

Declaration

```
element idno
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | idno )*
}
```

Example

```
<idno type="ISBN">978-1-906964-22-1</idno>
<idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno>
<idno type="DOI">http://dx.doi.org/10.1000/123</idno>
<idno type="URL">http://authority.nzetc.org/463</idno>
<idno type="LT">Thomason Tract E.537(17)</idno>
<idno type="Wing">C695</idno>
<idno type="oldCat">
  <g ref="#sym"/>345
</idno>
```

In the last case, the identifier includes a non-Unicode character which is defined elsewhere by means of a <glyph> or <char> element referenced here as **#sym**.

Note <idno> should be used for labels which identify an object or concept in a formal cataloguing system such as a database or an RDF store, or in a distributed system such as the World Wide Web.

<imprimatur> contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of model.titlepagePart

Contained by

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

element imprimatur { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }

Example

```
<imprimatur>Licensed and entred acording to Order.</imprimatur>
```

<imprint> groups information relating to the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.11.2.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

core: monogr

May contain

core: cb date gap gb index lb milestone note pb pubPlace publisher time

figures: notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element imprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( classCode, catRef )*,
  ( ( ( model.imprintPart ) | ( model.dateLike ) ), respStmt*, model.global* )+
}
```

Example

```
<incipit>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</incipit>
```

<incipit> contains the *incipit* of a manuscript item, that is the opening words of the text proper, exclusive of any *rubric* which might precede it, of sufficient length to identify the work uniquely; such incipits were, in former times, frequently used as a means of reference to a work, in place of a title. [10.6.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.msExcerpt (@defective)

Member of model.msQuoteLike

Contained by

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element incipit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<incipit>Pater noster qui es in celis</incipit>
<incipit defective="true">tatem dedit hominibus alleluia.</incipit>
<incipit type="biblical">Ghif ons huden onse dagelix broet</incipit>
<incipit>0 ongehoeerde gewerdighe christi</incipit>
<incipit type="lemma">Firmiter</incipit>
<incipit>Ideo dicit firmiter quia ordo fidei nostre probari non
potest</incipit>
```

<index> (index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose. [3.8.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.spanning (@spanTo)

@indexName (You must indicate the type of this index) a single word which
follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see
<http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>), supplying a name to
specify which index (of several) the index entry belongs to.

Status Required

Datatype data.name

Values an application-specific name, consisting of Unicode characters
only.

Legal values are: **name**

place

subject

citation

other

Note This attribute makes it possible to create multiple indexes for a
text.

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan
foreign head hi imprint index item l label lg list note orig p pubPlace publisher q
quote ref reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: index term

Declaration

```
element index
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  attribute indexName { "name" | "place" | "subject" | "citation" | "other" },
  ( term, index? )*
}
```

Example

```
David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen
<index indexName="NAMES">
  <term>Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term>
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura
<index indexName="PLACES">
  <term>Sura</term>
</index> was David's own first cousin.
```

<institution> contains the name of an organization such as a university or library,
with which a manuscript is identified, generally its holding institution. [10.4.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: altIdentifier msIdentifier

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element institution
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<msIdentifier>
  <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
  <institution>University of Oxford</institution>
  <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
  <idno>MS. Bodley 406</idno>
</msIdentifier>
```

<item> contains one component of a list. [3.7. 2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

Member of

Contained by

core: list

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element item
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```

<list type="ordered">
  <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
  <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
  <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate one third of the
Church revenues.</item>
  <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
  <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
  <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
  <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
  <item> ...</item>
</list>

```

Note May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks. Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global *n* attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the *n* attribute on the `<item>` element is by definition synonymous with the use of the `<label>` element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the `<label>` element, not *n*.

<1> (verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse. [3.12.1. 3.12. 7.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change*
(*@change*)) *att.metrical* (*@met*, *@real*, *@rhyme*) *att.enjamb* (*@enjamb*)
att.fragmentable (*@part*)

Member of model.ILike

Contained by

core: head item lg note q quote sp stage

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue set view

figures: figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textstructure: body div epigraph postscript

transcr: metamark

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
 orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
 trait
textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
 undo
verse: caesura rhyme
Declaration

```

element l
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.metrical.attributes,
  att.enjamb.attributes,
  att.fragmentable.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<l met="- / - / - / - / - /" part="Y"/>
```

<label> contains any label or heading used to identify part of a text, typically but not exclusively in a list or glossary. [3.7.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.placement (@place)

Member of model.labelLike

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l lg list note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure notatedMusic

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

namesdates: climate event location org place population terrain trait

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element label
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example Labels are commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global `xml:lang` attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```
<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">
  <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
  <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>
  <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
  <label>nu</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
  <label>lhude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
  <label>bloweth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
  <label>med</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
  <label>wude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
  <label>awe</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
  <label>lhouth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">lows</item>
  <label>sterteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks (cf. <cit>
    <ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>
    <quote>a courser, <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote>
```

```

    </cit>
  </item>
  <label>verteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
  <label>murie</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">merrily</item>
  <label>swik</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">cease</item>
  <label>naver</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>

```

Example Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the <label> element is synonymous with the n attribute on the <item> element:

```

I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred
in the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.
<list rend="runon" type="ordered">
  <label>(1)</label>
  <item>My first rough manuscript, without any intermediate copy, has been
sent to the press.</item>
  <label>(2) </label>
  <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human eyes, excepting those of the
author and the
  printer: the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>
</list>

```

Example Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

```

<list type="gloss">
  <label>March 1757.</label>
  <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
  <label>March 8th.</label>
  <item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>
  <label>June.</label>
  <item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod – <quote xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit amor,
et nos cedamus
  amori.</quote>
  </item>
  <label>August.</label>
  <item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>
</list>

```

Note that the <label> might also appear within the <item> rather than as its sibling. Though syntactically valid, this usage is not recommended TEI practice.

Example Labels may also be used to represent a label or heading attached to a paragraph or sequence of paragraphs not treated as a structural division, or to a group of verse lines. Note that, in this case, the <label> element appears *within* the <p> or <lg> element, rather than as a preceding sibling of it.

```

<p>[...]
<lb/>& n'entrer en mauuais & mal-heu-
<lb/>r  mefnage. Or des que le confente-
<lb/>ment des parties y eft le mariage eft
<lb/> arreft , quoy que de faict il ne foit
<label place="margin">Puiffance maritale
  entre les Romains.</label>
<lb/> conform . Depuis la conforma-

```

```
<lb/>tion du mariage la femme eft fous  
<lb/> la puiffance du mary, s'il n'eft efcla-  
<lb/>ue ou enfant de famille : car en ce  
<lb/> cas, la femme, qui a epoufé vn en-  
<lb/>fant de famille, eft fous la puiffance  
[...]</p>  
<p>In this example the text of the label appears in the right hand  
margin of the original source, next to the paragraph it describes, but  
approximately in the middle of it.  
  
<!-- graphic url="Images/marginal-label.png"/-->  
</p>  
<p>If so desired the <gi>type</gi> attribute may be used to  
distinguish different categories of label.</p>
```

<lacunaEnd/> indicates the end of a lacuna in a mostly complete textual witness.
[12.1.5.]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.rdgPart (@wit)

Member of model.rdgPart

Contained by

textcrit: lem rdg

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element lacunaEnd { att.global.attributes, att.rdgPart.attributes, empty }
```

Example

```
<rdg wit="#X">  
  <lacunaEnd/>auctorite  
</rdg>
```

<lacunaStart/> indicates the beginning of a lacuna in the text of a mostly complete
textual witness. [12.1.5.]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.rdgPart (@wit)

Member of model.rdgPart

Contained by

textcrit: lem rdg

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element lacunaStart { att.global.attributes, att.rdgPart.attributes, empty }
```

Example

```
<app>
  <lem wit="#E1 #Hg">Experience</lem>
  <rdg wit="#Ha4">Ex<g ref="#per"/>
    <lacunaStart/>
  </rdg>
</app>
```

<langKnowledge> (language knowledge) summarizes the state of a person's linguistic knowledge, either as prose or by a list of <langKnown> elements.

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

@tags supplies one or more valid language tags for the languages specified

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.language` separated by whitespace

Note This attribute should be supplied only if the element contains no <langKnown> children. Its values are language “tags” as defined in RFC 4646 or its successor

Member of model.persStateLike

Contained by

namesdates: person personGrp

May contain

core: p

namesdates: langKnown

Declaration

```
element langKnowledge
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute tags { list { data.language+ } }?,
  ( model.pLike | langKnown+ )
}
```

Example

```
<LangKnowledge tags="en-GB fr">
  <p>British English and French</p>
</LangKnowledge>
```

Example

```
<LangKnowledge>
  <LangKnown tag="en-GB" level="H">British English</LangKnown>
  <LangKnown tag="fr" level="M">French</LangKnown>
</LangKnowledge>
```

<langKnown> (language known) summarizes the state of a person's linguistic competence, i.e., knowledge of a single language. [15.2.2.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.datable (*@calendar*, *@period*) (att.datable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*)) (att.datable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*)) (att.datable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@source*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) (att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

@tag supplies a valid language tag for the language concerned.

Status Required

Datatype data.language

Note The value for this attribute should be a language "tag" as defined in BCP 47.

@level a code indicating the person's level of knowledge for this language

Status Optional

Datatype data.word

Member of ~~Confined by~~

namesdates: langKnowledge

May contain

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb hi index lb milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element langKnown
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute tag { data.language },
  attribute level { data.word }?,
  macro.phraseSeq.limited}
```

Example

```
<langKnown tag="en-GB" level="H">British English</langKnown>
<langKnown tag="fr" level="M">French</langKnown>
```

<layout> describes how text is laid out on the page, including information about any ruling, pricking, or other evidence of page-preparation techniques. [10.7.2.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)

(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

@columns specifies the number of columns per page

Status Optional

Datatype 1–2 occurrences of data.count separated by whitespace

Values may be given as a pair of numbers (to indicate a range) or as a single number.

@ruledLines specifies the number of ruled lines per column

Status Optional

Datatype 1–2 occurrences of data.count separated by whitespace

Values may be given as a pair of numbers (a range) or as a single number.

@writtenLines specifies the number of written lines per column

Status Optional

Datatype 1–2 occurrences of data.count separated by whitespace

Values may be given as a pair of numbers (a range), or as a single number.

Members Contained by

msdescription: layoutDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element layout
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute columns { list { data.count, data.count? } }?,
  attribute ruledLines { list { data.count, data.count? } }?,
  attribute writtenLines { list { data.count, data.count? } }?,
  macro.specialPara}
```

Example

```
<layout columns="1" ruledLines="25 32">Most pages have between 25 and 32  
long lines ruled in lead.</layout>
```

Example

```
<layout columns="2" ruledLines="42">  
<p>2 columns of 42 lines ruled in ink, with central rule  
between the columns.</p>  
</layout>
```

Example

```
<layout columns="1 2" writtenLines="40 50">  
<p>Some pages have 2 columns, with central rule  
between the columns; each column with between 40 and 50 lines of  
writing.</p>  
</layout>
```

<layoutDesc> (layout description) collects the set of layout descriptions applicable to a manuscript. [10.7.2.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: objectDesc

May contain

core: p

msdescription: layout summary

Declaration

```

element layoutDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, layout+ ) )
}

```

Example

```

<layoutDesc>
  <p>Most pages have between 25 and 32 long lines ruled in lead.</p>
</layoutDesc>

```

Example

```

<layoutDesc>
  <layout columns="2" ruledLines="42">
    <p>
      <locus from="f12r" to="f15v"/>
      2 columns of 42 lines pricked and ruled in ink, with
      central rule between the columns.</p>
    </layout>
    <layout columns="3">
      <p xml:lang="">
        <locus from="f16"/></p>
      </layout>
    </layoutDesc>

```

<lb/> (line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text. [3.10.3. 7.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning
 (@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan
 foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
 reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def entry etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue
 role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element lb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Example This example shows typographical line breaks within metrical lines, where they occur at different places in different editions:

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the  
Fruit</l>  
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>  
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our  
woe,</l>
```

Example This example encodes typographical line breaks as a means of preserving the visual appearance of a title page. The break attribute is used to show that the line break does not (as elsewhere) mark the start of a new word.

```
<titlePart rend="italic">  
  <lb/>L'auteur susdict supplie les Lecteurs  
<lb/>benevoles, soy reserver à rire au  
soi-<lb break="no"/>xante & dixhuytiesme livre.  
</titlePart>
```

Note By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the point in the text where a new line starts. The n attribute, if used, indicates the number or other value associated with the text between this point and the next <lb> element, typically the sequence number of the line within the page, or other appropriate unit. This element is intended to be used for marking actual line breaks on a manuscript or printed page, at the point where they occur; it should not be used to tag structural units such as lines of verse (for which the <l> element is available) except in circumstances where structural units cannot otherwise be marked. The type attribute may be used to characterize the line break in any respect. The more specialized attributes break, ed,

or edRef should be preferred when the intent is to indicate whether or not the line break is word-breaking, or to note the source from which it derives.

<lem> (lemma) contains the lemma, or base text, of a textual variation. [12.1.]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
 (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
 (*@change*)) att.textCritical (*@type*, *@cause*, *@varSeq*, *@hand*) (att.responsibility
 (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.witnessed (*@wit*)

Member of

Contained by

textcrit: app rdgGrp

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
 label lb list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
 orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
 trait

textcrit: app lacunaEnd lacunaStart listApp listWit wit witDetail witEnd witStart

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
 undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element lem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.textCritical.attributes,
  att.witnessed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter
    | model.global    | model.rdgPart  )*
}

```

Example

```

<app>
  <Lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</Lem>
  <rdg wit="#La" type="substantive">Experiment</rdg>
  <rdg wit="#Ra2" type="substantive">Eryment</rdg>
</app>

```

Note The term *lemma* is used in text criticism to describe the reading in the text itself (as opposed to those in the apparatus); this usage is distinct from that of mathematics (where a lemma is a major step in a proof) and natural-language processing (where a lemma is the dictionary form associated with an inflected form in the running text).

<lg> (line group) contains one or more verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc. [3.12.1. 3.12. 7.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.divLike (@part) (att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of macro.paraContent model.divPart

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def gen pos subc usg

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: cb gap gb head index l label lb lg milestone note pb stage

drama: camera caption move sound tech view

figures: notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```

element lg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,

```

```

(
  ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
  ( model.lLike | model.stageLike | model.labelLike | lg ),
  ( model.lLike | model.stageLike | model.labelLike | model.global | lg )*,
  ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
)
}

```

Schematron <sch:assert test="count(descendant::tei:lg|descendant::tei:l|descendant::tei:gap) > 0">An lg element must contain at least one child l, lg or gap element.</sch:assert>

Example

```

<lg type="free">
  <l>Let me be my own fool</l>
  <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
  <l>is equivocal.</l>
  <l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>
</lg>
<lg type="free">
  <l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>
  <l>the explanation.</l>
</lg>

```

Note contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

<licence> contains information about a licence or other legal agreement applicable to the text. [2.2.4.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

Member of model.availabilityPart

Contained by

header: availability

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element licence
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<licence
  target="http://www.nzetc.org/tm/scholarly/
  tei-NZETC-Help.html#licensing"> Licence: Creative Commons Attribution-Share
  Alike 3.0 New Zealand Licence
</licence>

```

Example

```
<availability>
  <licence
    target="http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by/3.0/"
    notBefore="2013-01-01">
    <p>The Creative Commons Attribution 3.0 Unported (CC BY 3.0) Licence
    applies to this document.</p>
    <p>The licence was added on January 1, 2013.</p>
  </licence>
</availability>

```

Note A <licence> element should be supplied for each licence agreement applicable to the text in question. The target attribute may be used to reference a full version of the licence. The when, notBefore, notAfter, from or to attributes may be used in combination to indicate the date or dates of applicability of the licence.

<line> contains the transcription of a topographic line in the source document

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.coordinated (@start, @ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry)

Member of model.linePart

Contained by

transcr: line

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: cb gap gb hi index lb milestone note pb

figures: notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan line listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin
surplus undo

Declaration

```
element line
{
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.coordinated.attributes,
  ( text | model.global | model.linePart )*
}
```

Example

```
<surface>
  <zone>
    <line>Poem</line>
    <line>As in Visions of – at</line>
    <line>night –</line>
    <line>All sorts of fancies running through</line>
    <line>the head</line>
  </zone>
</surface>
```

Example

```
<surface>
  <zone>
    <line>Hope you enjoyed</line>
    <line>Wales, as they
      said</line>
    <line>to Mrs FitzHerbert</line>
    <line>Mama</line>
  </zone>
  <zone>
    <line>Printed in England</line>
  </zone>
</surface>
```

Note This element should be used only to mark up writing which is topographically organized as a series of lines, horizontal or vertical. It should not be used to mark lines of verse (for which use <l>) nor to mark linebreaks within text which has been encoded using structural elements such as <p> (for which use <lb>).

<list> (list) contains any sequence of items organized as a list. [3.7.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,

@select) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.sortable (*@sortKey*)

@type describes the form of the list.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **ordered** list items are numbered or lettered.

bulleted list items are marked with a bullet or other typographic device.

simple list items are not numbered or bulleted. [Default]

gloss each list item glosses some term or concept, which is given by a label element preceding the list item.

Note The formal syntax of the element declarations allows <label> tags to be omitted from lists tagged <list type="gloss">; this is however a semantic error.

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence revisionDesc scriptNote sourceDesc typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote

filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: cb gap gb head index item label lb milestone note pb

figures: notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```

element list
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute type { "ordered" | "bulleted" | "simple" | "gloss" | xsd:Name }?,
  (
    ( ( model.divTop ) | ( model.global ) )*,
    (
      ( item, model.global* )+
      | (
          headLabel?,
          headItem?,

```

2 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

```
        ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+
      )
    ),
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<list type="ordered">
  <item>a butcher</item>
  <item>a baker</item>
  <item>a candlestick maker, with <list type="bullets">
    <item>rings on his fingers</item>
    <item>bells on his toes</item>
  </list>
</item>
</list>
```

Example The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```
<div1 type="section">
  <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
  <list type="ordered">
    <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be spared who
is caught with
      the stolen goods, [if he is] over twelve years and [if the value of
the goods is] over
      eightpence. <list type="ordered">
        <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the thief
with his
          wergild – and the thief is to be no nearer a settlement on that
account – or to
          clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
        <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself or
to escape, he is
          not to be spared [whether younger or older than twelve].</item>
        <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison 40
days, and he may
          then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the kindred are to stand
surety for him
          that he will desist for ever.</item>
        <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with
his wergild,
          or to bring him back there.</item>
        <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him with
his wergild,
          whether to the king or to him to whom it rightly belongs; and
everyone of those who
          supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a
fine.</item>
      </list>
    </item>
    <item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these
lordless men, from whom
      no justice can be obtained, that one should order their kindred to
fetch back such a
      person to justice and to find him a lord in public meeting.
  </list type="ordered">
    <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on that
appointed day,
```



```
        he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and he who encounters him
is to strike him
        down as a thief.</item>
    <item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him
with his wergild
        or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who refuses
justice and upholds
        his guilty man, so that the king is appealed to, is to repay the value
of the goods and
        120 shillings to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he
demands justice as
        often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the other would have
done, if he had
        refused him justice. <list type="ordered">
    <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his slave,
and it becomes
        known about him, is to forfeit the slave and be liable to his
wergild on the first
        occasionp if he does it more often, he is to be liable to pay all
that he owns.</item>
    <item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our
reeves, who has been
        an accessory of thieves who have committed theft, is to liable to
the same.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced
concerning treachery to
        a lord, that he [who is accused] is to forfeit his life if he cannot
deny it or is
        afterwards convicted at the three-fold ordeal.</item>
</list>
</div1>
```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

Example

```
<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the public
council ... and they
confirmed them in our hand in your stead with the sign of the Holy Cross,
and afterwards
inscribed with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the
sign of the Holy
Cross. <list type="simple">
    <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy church of
York, have
        subscribed to the pious and catholic validity of this document with
the sign of the Holy
        Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber, consenting have
subscribed with
        the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing have
subscribed with the
        sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying have
```

```

subscribed with the
  sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
<item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have subscribed
with the sign of
  the Holy Cross.</item>
<item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed with
devout will.</item>
<item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through delegates.</item>
<item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind with the sign
of the Holy
  Cross.</item>
</list>
</p>

```

Note May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

<listApp> (list of apparatus entries) contains a list of apparatus entries. [12.2.]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
 (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
 (*@change*)) att.sortable (*@sortKey*) att.declarable (*@default*) att.typed (*@type*,
@subtype)

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textcrit: lem listApp rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: head

textcrit: app listApp

Declaration

```

element listApp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( model.headLike*, ( app | listApp )+ )
}

```

Example In the following example from the exegetical Yasna, the base text is encoded in the <body> of the document, and two separate <listApp> elements are used in the <back>, containing variant readings written in different scripts.

```
<body>
  <div>
    <lg
      type="stanza"
      xml:id="Y-36.01"
      xml:lang="pal-Avst"
      rend="italic">
      <l xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_L-1">
        <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-01">ahiiā</w>
        <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-02">θβā</w>
        <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-03">āθrō</w>
        <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-04">vərazēā</w>
        <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-05">paouruiē</w>
        <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-06">pairijasāmaidē</w>
        <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-07">mazdā</w>
        <w xml:id="Y-36.01_L1_W-08">ahurā</w>
      </l>
    </lg>
  </div>
</body>
<!-- ... -->
<back>
  <div>
    <listApp xml:id="CA_Y-36" xml:lang="pal-Avst">
      <head>Variants from witnesses in Avestan script</head>
      <app from="#Y-36.01_L1_W-01">
        <rdg wit="#Pt4 #F2 #J2 #M1">ahiiā</rdg>
      </app>
      <app from="#Y-36.01_L1_W-02">
        <rdg wit="#Pt4 #F2 #J2 #M1">θβā</rdg>
      </app>
      <app from="#Y-36.01_L1_W-03">
        <rdg wit="#Pt4 #J2 #M1">āθrō</rdg>
        <rdg wit="#F2">āθrōi</rdg>
      </app>
    </listApp>
    <listApp xml:id="CA_PY-36" xml:lang="pal-Phlv">
      <head>Variants from witnesses written in Pahlavi script</head>
      <app from="#PY-36.01_L1_W-01">
        <rdg wit="#Pt4 #F2 #J2 #M1">'ytn'</rdg>
      </app>
      <app from="#PY-36.01_L1_W-02">
        <rdg wit="#Pt4 #F2 #J2 #M1">'w'</rdg>
      </app>
      <app from="#PY-36.01_L1_W-03">
        <rdg wit="#Pt4 #F2 #J2 #M1">N'</rdg>
      </app>
    </listApp>
  </div>
</back>
```

Note <listApp> elements would normally be located in the <back> part of a document, but they may appear elsewhere.

<listChange> groups a number of change descriptions associated with either the creation of a source text or the revision of an encoded text.

Module header

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@style`, `@xml:space`)
`(att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) `(att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) `(att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) `(att.global.change`
`(@change))` `att.sortable` (`@sortKey`)

Ordered indicates whether the ordering of its child `<change>` elements is to be considered significant or not

Status Optional

Datatype `data.truthValue`

Default true

Member of

header: listChange revisionDesc

May contain

header: change listChange

Declaration

```

element listChange
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute ordered { data.truthValue }?,
  ( listChange | change )+
}

```

Example

```

<revisionDesc>
  <listChange>
    <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
    <change when="1991-11-02" who="#MSM"> completed first draft </change>
  </listChange>
</revisionDesc>

```

Example

```

<profileDesc>
  <creation>
    <listChange ordered="true">
      <change xml:id="CHG-1">First stage, written in ink by a writer</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-2">Second stage, written in Goethe's hand using
pencil</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-3">Fixation of the revised passages and further
revisions by
        Goethe using ink</change>
      <change xml:id="CHG-4">Addition of another stanza in a different hand,
probably at a later stage</change>
    </listChange>
  </creation>
</profileDesc>

```

Note When this element appears within the `<creation>` element it documents the set of revision campaigns or stages identified during the evolution of the original text.

When it appears within the <revisionDesc> element, it documents only changes made during the evolution of the encoded representation of that text.

<listEvent> (list of events) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable event.

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey)

Member of model.listLike model.persEventLike

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

namesdates: listEvent person personGrp

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: head

namesdates: event listEvent listRelation relation relationGrp

Declaration

```
element listEvent
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( event | listEvent )+,
    ( relation | relationGrp | listRelation )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<listEvent>
  <head>Battles of the American Civil War: Kentucky</head>
  <event xml:id="event01" when="1861-09-19">
    <label>Barbourville</label>
    <desc>The Battle of Barbourville was one of the early engagements of
      the American Civil War. It occurred September 19, 1861, in Knox
```

```

    County, Kentucky during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate
    Offensive. The battle is considered the first Confederate victory in
    the commonwealth, and threw a scare into Federal commanders, who
    rushed troops to central Kentucky in an effort to repel the invasion,
    which was finally thwarted at the <ref target="#event02">Battle of
    Camp Wildcat</ref> in October.</desc>
</event>
<event xml:id="event02" when="1861-10-21">
  <label>Camp Wild Cat</label>
  <desc>The Battle of Camp Wildcat (also known as Wildcat Mountain and Camp
  Wild Cat) was one of the early engagements of the American Civil
  War. It occurred October 21, 1861, in northern Laurel County, Kentucky
  during the campaign known as the Kentucky Confederate Offensive. The
  battle is considered one of the very first Union victories, and marked
  the first engagement of troops in the commonwealth of Kentucky.</desc>
</event>
<event xml:id="event03" from="1864-06-11" to="1864-06-12">
  <label>Cynthiana</label>
  <desc>The Battle of Cynthiana (or Kellar's Bridge) was an engagement
  during the American Civil War that was fought on June 11 and 12, 1864,
  in Harrison County, Kentucky, near the town of Cynthiana. A part of
  Confederate Brigadier General John Hunt Morgan's 1864 Raid into
  Kentucky, the battle resulted in a victory by Union forces over the
  raiders and saved the town from capture.</desc>
</event>
</listEvent>

```

<listNym> (list of canonical names) contains a list of nyms, that is, standardized names for any thing. [13.3.5.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable
 (@sortKey)

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

namesdates: listNym

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: head

namesdates: listNym listRelation nym relation relationGrp

Declaration

```
element listNym
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( nym | listNym )+,
    ( listRelation | relationGrp | relation )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<listNym type="floral">
  <nym xml:id="ROSE">
    <form>Rose</form>
  </nym>
  <nym xml:id="DAISY">
    <form>Daisy</form>
    <etym>Contraction of <mentioned>day's eye</mentioned>
  </etym>
  </nym>
  <nym xml:id="HTHR">
    <form>Heather</form>
  </nym>
</listNym>
```

Note The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of names of a particular type if convenient.

<listOrg> (list of organizations) contains a list of elements, each of which provides information about an identifiable organization. [13.2.2.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable (@sortKey)

Member of model.listLike model.orgPart

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

namesdates: listOrg org

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: head

namesdates: listOrg listRelation org relation relationGrp

Declaration

```
element listOrg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( org | listOrg )+,
    ( listRelation | relationGrp | relation )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<listOrg>
  <head>Libyans</head>
  <org>
    <orgName>Adyrmachidae</orgName>
    <desc>These people have, in most points, the same customs as the
Egyptians, but
      use the costume of the Libyans. Their women wear on each leg a ring
made of
      bronze [...] </desc>
  </org>
  <org>
    <orgName>Nasamonians</orgName>
    <desc>In summer they leave their flocks and herds upon the sea-shore, and
go up
      the country to a place called Augila, where they gather the dates from
the
      palms [...]</desc>
  </org>
  <org>
    <orgName>Garamantians</orgName>
    <desc>[...] avoid all society or intercourse with their fellow-men, have
no
      weapon of war, and do not know how to defend themselves. [...]</desc>
  <!-- ... -->
  </org>
</listOrg>
```

Note The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of organizations of a particular type if convenient.

<listPerson> (list of persons) contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source. [13.3.2. 15.2. 2.4. 15.3.2.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable
(@sortKey)

Member of model.listLike model.orgPart

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

namesdates: listPerson org

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: head

namesdates: listPerson listRelation org person personGrp relation relationGrp

Declaration

```
element listPerson
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( model.personLike | listPerson )+,
    ( relation | listRelation | relationGrp )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<listPerson type="respondents">
  <personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/>
  <person xml:id="P1234" sex="2" age="mid"/>
  <person xml:id="P4332" sex="1" age="mid"/>
  <listRelation>
    <relation type="personal" name="spouse" mutual="#P1234 #P4332"/>
  </listRelation>
</listPerson>
```

Note The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient.

<listPlace> (list of places) contains a list of places, optionally followed by a list of relationships (other than containment) defined amongst them.

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.declarable (@default) att.sortable
(@sortKey)

Member of model.listLike model.orgPart

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

namesdates: listPlace org place

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: head

namesdates: listPlace listRelation place relation relationGrp

Declaration

```
element listPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    ( model.placeLike | listPlace )+,
    ( listRelation | relationGrp | relation )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<listPlace type="offshoreIslands">
  <place>
    <placeName>La roche qui pleure</placeName>
  </place>
  <place>
    <placeName>Ile aux cerfs</placeName>
  </place>
</listPlace>
```

<listPrefixDef> (list of prefix definitions) contains a list of definitions of prefixing schemes used in `data.pointer` values, showing how abbreviated URIs using each scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [16.2.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@style`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`))

Member of `model.encodingDescPart`

Contained by

header: `encodingDesc listPrefixDef`

May contain

header: `listPrefixDef prefixDef`

Declaration

```
element listPrefixDef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( prefixDef | listPrefixDef )+ )
}
```

Example In this example, two private URI scheme prefixes are defined and patterns are provided for dereferencing them. Each prefix is also supplied with a human-readable explanation in a `<p>` element.

```
<listPrefixDef>
  <prefixDef ident="psn" matchPattern="([A-Z]
+) " replacementPattern="personography.xml#$1">
    <p> Private URIs using the <code>psn</code>
    prefix are pointers to <gi>person</gi>
    elements in the personography.xml file.
    For example, <code>psn:MDH</code>
    dereferences to <code>personography.xml#MDH</code>.
  </p>
</prefixDef>
  <prefixDef
    ident="bibl"
    matchPattern="([a-z]+[a-z0-9]*) "
    replacementPattern="http://www.example.com/getBibl.xql?id=$1">
    <p> Private URIs using the <code>bibl</code> prefix can be
    expanded to form URIs which retrieve the relevant
    bibliographical reference from www.example.com.
  </p>
</prefixDef>
</listPrefixDef>
```

<listRelation> provides information about relationships identified amongst people, places, and organizations, either informally as prose or as formally expressed relation links. [15.2.2.]

Module namespaces

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@style`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) `att.typed` (`@type`, `@subtype`) `att.sortable` (`@sortKey`)

Member of model.biblLike

Contained by

core: cit corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

namesdates: climate event listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location org
place population terrain trait

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: p

namesdates: relation

Declaration

```
element listRelation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | relation+ )
}
```

Example

```
<listPerson>
  <person xml:id="pp1">
<!-- data about person pp1 -->
  </person>
  <person xml:id="pp2">
<!-- data about person pp1 -->
  </person>
<!-- more person (pp3, pp4) elements here -->
</listPerson>
<listRelation type="personal">
  <relation name="parent" active="#pp1 #pp2" passive="#pp3 #pp4"/>
  <relation name="spouse" mutual="#pp1 #pp2"/>
</listRelation>
<listRelation type="social">
  <relation name="employer" active="#pp1" passive="#pp3 #pp5 #pp6 #pp7"/>
</listRelation>
```

The persons with identifiers pp1 and p2 are the parents of pp3 and pp4; they are also married to each other; pp1 is the employer of pp3, pp5, pp6, and pp7.

Example

```
<listRelation>
  <p>All speakers are members of the Ceruli family, born in Naples.</p>
</listRelation>
```

Note May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of <relation> elements.

<listTranspose> supplies a list of transpositions, each of which is indicated at some point in a document typically by means of metamarks.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.global.meta model.profileDescPart

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence profileDesc scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

transcr: transpose

Declaration

```
element listTranspose { att.global.attributes, transpose+ }
```

Example

```
<listTranspose>
  <transpose>
    <ptr target="#ib02"/>
    <ptr target="#ib01"/>
  </transpose>
</listTranspose>
```

This example might be used for a source document which indicates in some way that the elements identified by **ib02** and code **ib01** should be read in that order (ib02 followed by ib01), rather than in the reading order in which they are presented in the source.

<listWit> (witness list) lists definitions for all the witnesses referred to by a critical apparatus, optionally grouped hierarchically. [12.1.]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textcrit: lem listWit rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: head

textcrit: listWit witness

Declaration

```

element listWit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  ( model.headLike?, ( witness | listWit )+ )
}

```

Example

```

<listWit>
  <witness xml:id="HL26">Ellesmere, Huntingdon Library 26.C.9</witness>
  <witness xml:id="PN392">Hengwrt, National Library of Wales,
    Aberystwyth, Peniarth 392D</witness>
  <witness xml:id="RP149">Bodleian Library Rawlinson Poetic 149
    (see further <ptr target="#MSRP149"/></witness>
</listWit>

```

Note May contain a series of <witness> or <listWit> elements. The provision of a <listWit> element simplifies the automatic processing of the apparatus, e.g. the reconstruction of the readings for all witnesses from an exhaustive apparatus. Situations commonly arise where there are many more or less fragmentary witnesses,

such that there may be quite distinct groups of witnesses for different parts of a text or collection of texts. Such groups may be given separately, or nested within a single <listWit> element at the beginning of the file listing all the witnesses, partial and complete, for the text, with the attestation of fragmentary witnesses indicated within the apparatus by use of the <witStart> and <witEnd> elements described in section 12.1.5..

Note however that a given witness can only be defined once, and can therefore only appear within a single <listWit> element.

<localName> (locally-defined property name) contains a locally defined name for some property.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

gaiji: charProp

May contain Character data only

Declaration `element localName { att.global.attributes, text }`

Example

```
<localName>daikanwa</localName>
<localName>entity</localName>
```

Note No definitive list of local names is proposed. However, the name entity is recommended as a means of naming the property identifying the recommended character entity name for this character or glyph.

<location> defines the location of a place as a set of geographical coordinates, in terms of other named geo-political entities, or as an address.

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))

Member of model.placeStateLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign

2 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker
stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName place
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: address bibl biblStruct label note

header: biblFull

msdescription: depth dim height msDesc width

namesdates: affiliation country geo geogFeat listRelation offset relationGrp settlement

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element location
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  (
    model.labelLike      | model.placeNamePart
    | model.offsetLike    | model.measureLike      | model.addressLike      | model.noteLike
  )
}
```

Example

```
<place>
  <placeName>Abbey Dore</placeName>
  <location>
    <geo>51.969604 -2.893146</geo>
  </location>
</place>
```

Example

```
<place type="building">
  <placeName>Brasserie Georges</placeName>
  <location>
    <country key="FR"/>
    <settlement type="city">Lyon</settlement>
    <district type="arrondissement">Perrache</district>
```



```
<placeName type="street">Rue de la Charité</placeName>
</location>
</place>
```

Example

```
<place type="imaginary">
  <placeName>Atlantis</placeName>
  <location>
    <offset>beyond</offset>
    <placeName>The Pillars of <persName>Hercules</persName>
  </placeName>
</location>
</place>
```

<locus> defines a location within a manuscript or manuscript part, usually as a (possibly discontinuous) sequence of folio references. [10.3.5.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate)

@scheme identifies the foliation scheme in terms of which the location is being specified.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Values A pointer to some <foliation> element which defines the foliation scheme used, or an external link to some equivalent resource.

@from specifies the starting point of the location in a normalized form.

Status Optional

Datatype data.word

Values typically this will be a page number

@to specifies the end-point of the location in a normalized form.

Status Optional

Datatype data.word

Values typically this will be a page number

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout

2 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

locusGrp material msItem msItemStruct musicNotation objectType origDate
origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support
surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence
roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element locus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
  attribute from { data.word }?,
  attribute to { data.word }?,
  macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<!-- within ms description --><msItem n="1">
  <locus target="#F1r #F1v #F2r" from="1r" to="2r">ff. 1r-2r</locus>
  <author>Ben Jonson</author>
  <title>Ode to himself</title>
  <rubric rend="italics"> An Ode<lb/> to him selfe.</rubric>
  <incipit>Com leaue the loathed stage</incipit>
  <explicit>And see his chariot triumph ore his wayne.</explicit>
  <bibl>
    <name>Beal</name>, <title>Index 1450-1625</title>, JnB 380</bibl>
  </msItem>
  <!-- within transcription ... -->
  <pb xml:id="F1r"/>
  <!-- ... -->
  <pb xml:id="F1v"/>
  <!-- ... -->
  <pb xml:id="F2r"/>
  <!-- ... -->
```

Example The `fac` attribute is available globally when the `transcr` module is included in a schema. It may be used to point directly to an image file, as in the following example:

```
<msItem>
  <locus
    facs="images/08v.jpg images/09r.jpg images/09v.jpg images/10r.jpg
    images/10v.jpg">fols. 8v-10v</locus>
  <title>Birds Praise of Love</title>
  <bibl>
    <title>IMEV</title>
    <biblScope>1506</biblScope>
  </bibl>
</msItem>
```

Note The target attribute should only be used to point to elements that contain or indicate a transcription of the locus being described, as in the first example above. To associate a <locus> element with a page image or other comparable representation, the global facs attribute should be used instead, as shown in the second example. Use of the target attribute to indicate an image is strongly deprecated. The facs attribute may be used to indicate one or more image files, as above, or alternatively it may point to one or more appropriate XML elements, such as the <surface>, <zone> element, <graphic>, or <binaryObject> elements.

<locusGrp> groups a number of locations which together form a distinct but discontinuous item within a manuscript or manuscript part, according to a specific foliation. [10.3.5.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@scheme identifies the foliation scheme in terms of which all the locations contained by the group are specified.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Values A pointer to some <foliation> element which defines the foliation scheme used, or an external link to some equivalent resource.

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem msItemStruct musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

msdescription: locus

Declaration

```
element locusGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
  locus+
}
```

Example

```
<msItem>
  <locusGrp>
    <locus from="13" to="26">Bl. 13--26</locus>
    <locus from="37" to="58">37--58</locus>
    <locus from="82" to="96">82--96</locus>
  </locusGrp>
  <note>Stücke von Daniel Ecklin's Reise ins h. Land</note>
</msItem>
```

<mapping> (character mapping) contains one or more characters which are related to the parent character or glyph in some respect, as specified by the type attribute.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of

Contained by

gaiji: char glyph

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element mapping { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

Example

```
<mapping type="modern">r</mapping>
<mapping type="standard">□</mapping>
```

Note Suggested values for the type attribute include **exact** for exact equivalences, **uppercase** for uppercase equivalences, **lowercase** for lowercase equivalences, and **simplified** for simplified characters. The <g> elements contained by this element can point to either another <char> or <glyph> element or contain a character that is intended to be the target of this mapping.

<material> contains a word or phrase describing the material of which the object being described is composed. [10.3.2.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item
l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence
roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element material
{
  att.global.attributes,
```

att.canonical.attributes, macro.phraseSeq}

Example

```

<physDesc>
  <p>
    <material>Parchment</material> leaves with a
    <material>sharkskin</material> binding.</p>
</physDesc>

```

Note The ref attribute may be used to point to one or more items within a taxonomy of types of material, defined either internally or externally.

<media> indicates the location of any form of external media such as an audio or video clip etc. [3.9.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.resourced (@url) att.timed (@start, @end) att.media (@width, @height, @scale)

@mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type

Derived from att.internetMedia

Status Required

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of **data.word** separated by whitespace

Values The value should be a valid MIME media type

Member of model.graphicLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figure formula table

gaiji: char glyph

header: change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation birth country death education faith floruit forename genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element media
{
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  att.media.attribute.width,
  att.media.attribute.height,
  att.media.attribute.scale,
  att.resourced.attributes,
  att.timed.attributes,
  attribute mimeType { list { data.word+ } },
  model.descLike*
}
```

Example

```
<figure>
  <media mimeType="image/png" url="fig1.png"/>
  <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four or five sailing boats in the
  foreground, and a
  series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

Example

```
<media mimeType="audio/wav" url="dingDong.wav" dur="PT10S">
  <desc>Ten seconds of bellringing sound</desc>
</media>
```

Example

```
<media
  mimeType="video/mp4"
  url="clip45.mp4"
  dur="PT45M"
  width="500px">
  <desc>A 45 minute video clip to be displayed in a window 500
  px wide </desc>
</media>
```

Note The attributes available for this element are not appropriate in all cases. For example, it makes no sense to specify the temporal duration of a graphic. Such errors are not currently detected. The mimeType attribute must be used to specify the MIME media type of the resource specified by the url attribute.

<metamark> contains or describes any kind of graphic or written signal within a document the function of which is to determine how it should be read rather than forming part of the actual content of the document.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.spanning (@spanTo) att.placement (@place) att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@function describes the function (for example status, insertion, deletion, transposition) of the mark.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.word`

@target identifies one or more elements to which the function indicated by the metamark applies.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Member of model.global

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset

orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element metamark
{
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute function { data.word }?,
  attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

<milestone/> marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, typically but not necessarily indicating a point at which some part of a standard reference system changes, where the change is not represented by a structural element. [3.10.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning
(@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

@unit (You must indicate the unit that this milestone marks. The proposed values have been taken from the P5 documentation) provides a conventional name for the kind of section changing at this milestone.

Derived from att.milestoneUnit

Status Required

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **book**

poem
canto
stanza
act
scene
section
absent

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan
foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def entry etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element milestone
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  attribute unit
  {
    "book"
    | "poem"
    | "canto"
    | "stanza"
    | "act"
    | "scene"
    | "section"
    | "absent"
  },
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/>
... <milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/> ...
```

Note For this element, the global *n* attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value *unnumbered* should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme, such as chapter or other headings, poem numbers or titles, etc. The order in which milestone elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

<mod> represents any kind of modification identified within a single document.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike
 (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent,
 @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)))
 (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.spanning
 (@spanTo)

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc w

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
 item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
 textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell

header: change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation birth country death education faith floruit forename
 genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName
 sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
 label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
 orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
 trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element mod
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<mod type="subst">
  <add>pleasing</add>
  <del>agreable</del>
</mod>
```

<monogr> (monographic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. a book or journal) published as an independent item (i.e. as a separate physical object). [3.11.2.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of

Contained by

core: biblStruct

May contain

core: author editor imprint note ref textLang title

header: authority edition extent idno

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element monogr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      ( author | editor | meeting | respStmt ),
      ( author | editor | meeting | respStmt )*,
      title+,
      ( idno | textLang | editor | respStmt )*
    )
    | (
      ( title | ref )+,
      ( idno | textLang | author | editor | meeting | respStmt )*
    )
    | ( authority, idno )
  )?,
  model.noteLike*,
```

```
( edition, ( idno | editor | sponsor | funder | respStmt )* )*,  
  imprint,  
  ( imprint | extent | biblScope )*  
)
```

Example

```
<biblStruct>  
  <analytic>  
    <author>Chesnutt, David</author>  
    <title>Historical Editions in the States</title>  
  </analytic>  
  <monogr>  
    <title level="j">Computers and the Humanities</title>  
    <imprint>  
      <date when="1991-12">(December, 1991):</date>  
    </imprint>  
    <biblScope>25.6</biblScope>  
    <biblScope unit="pp" from="377" to="380">377-380</biblScope>  
  </monogr>  
</biblStruct>
```

Example

```
<biblStruct type="book">  
  <monogr>  
    <author>  
      <persName>  
        <forename>Leo Joachim</forename>  
        <surname>Frachtenberg</surname>  
      </persName>  
    </author>  
    <title type="main" level="m">Lower Umpqua Texts</title>  
    <imprint>  
      <pubPlace>New York</pubPlace>  
      <publisher>Columbia University Press</publisher>  
      <date>1914</date>  
    </imprint>  
  </monogr>  
  <series>  
    <title type="main" level="s">Columbia University Contributions to  
      Anthropology</title>  
    <biblScope unit="vol">4</biblScope>  
  </series>  
</biblStruct>
```

Note May contain specialized bibliographic elements, in a prescribed order. The <monogr> element may only occur only within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of a monographic-level bibliographic item.

<move/> (movement) marks the actual entrance or exit of one or more characters on stage. [7.2.4.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.ascribed (@who)

@type characterizes the movement, for example as an entrance or exit.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **entrance** character is entering the stage.

exit character is exiting the stage.

onStage character moves on stage

@where specifies the direction of a stage movement.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by whitespace

Sample values include: **L** (left) stage left

R (right) stage right

C (center) centre stage

Note Full blocking information will normally require combinations of values, (for example “UL” for “upper stage left”) and may also require more detailed encoding of speed, direction etc. Full documentation of any coding system used should be provided in the header.

@perf (performance) identifies the performance or performances in which this movement occurred as specified.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values The references are derived from the xml:id attribute on a <performance> element.

Member of model.stageLike

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote

filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element move
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  attribute type { "entrance" | "exit" | "onStage" | xsd:Name }?,
  attribute where { list { data.enumerated+ } }?,
  attribute perf { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
}
```

```
    empty  
  }
```

Example

```
<performance xml:id="perf1">  
  <p>First performance</p>  
  <castList>  
    <castItem>  
      <role xml:id="bellaf">Bellafront</role>  
    </castItem>  
    <!-- ... -->  
  </castList>  
</performance>  
<!-- ... -->  
<stage type="entrance">  
  <move  
    who="#bellaf"  
    type="enter"  
    where="L"  
    perf="#perf1"/> Enter  
  Bellafront mad.  
</stage>
```

<msContents> (manuscript contents) describes the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of structured manuscript items. [10.6.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.msExcerpt (@defective)

@class identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this object.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of **data.pointer** separated by whitespace

Values One or more codes, each of which is used as the identifier for a <category> element in a <taxonomy> element typically not necessarily supplied in the current document header.

Member of Confined by

msdescription: msDesc msPart

May contain

core: p textLang

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct summary

textstructure: titlePage

Declaration

```
element msContents  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,  
  attribute class { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
```

```

(
  model.pLike+
  | ( summary?, textLang?, titlePage?, ( msItem
  | msItemStruct ) * )
)
}

```

Example

```

<msContents>
  <p>A collection of Lollard sermons</p>
</msContents>

```

Example

```

<msContents>
  <msItem n="1">
    <locus>fols. 5r-7v</locus>
    <title>An ABC</title>
    <bibl>
      <title>IMEV</title>
      <biblScope>239</biblScope>
    </bibl>
  </msItem>
  <msItem n="2">
    <locus>fols. 7v-8v</locus>
    <title xml:lang="frm">Lenvoy de Chaucer a Scogan</title>
    <bibl>
      <title>IMEV</title>
      <biblScope>3747</biblScope>
    </bibl>
  </msItem>
  <msItem n="3">
    <locus>fol. 8v</locus>
    <title>Truth</title>
    <bibl>
      <title>IMEV</title>
      <biblScope>809</biblScope>
    </bibl>
  </msItem>
  <msItem n="4">
    <locus>fols. 8v-10v</locus>
    <title>Birds Praise of Love</title>
    <bibl>
      <title>IMEV</title>
      <biblScope>1506</biblScope>
    </bibl>
  </msItem>
  <msItem n="5">
    <locus>fols. 10v-11v</locus>
    <title xml:lang="la">De amico ad amicam</title>
    <title xml:lang="la">Responcio</title>
    <bibl>
      <title>IMEV</title>
      <biblScope>16 & 19</biblScope>
    </bibl>
  </msItem>
  <msItem n="6">
    <locus>fols. 14r-126v</locus>
    <title>Troilus and Criseyde</title>
    <note>Bk. 1:71-Bk. 5:1701, with additional losses due to mutilation
    throughout</note>
  </msItem>
</msContents>

```



```
</msItem>  
</msContents>
```

Note Unless it contains a simple prose description, this element should contain at least one of the elements <summary>, <msItem>, or <msItemStruct>. This constraint is not currently enforced by the schema.

<msDesc> (manuscript description) contains a description of a single identifiable manuscript or other text-bearing object. [10.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.sortable (@sortKey) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.biblLike

Contained by

core: cit corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

namesdates: climate event location org place population terrain trait

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: head p

msdescription: additional history msContents msIdentifier msPart physDesc

Declaration

```
element msDesc  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.sortable.attributes,  
  att.typed.attributes,  
  (  
    msIdentifier,  
    model.headLike*,  
    (  
      model.pLike+  
      | ( msContents?, physDesc?, history?, additional?, msPart* )  
    )  
  )  
}
```

Example

```

<msDesc>
  <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
    <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
    <idno type="Bod">MS Poet. Rawl. D. 169.</idno>
  </msIdentifier>
  <msContents>
    <msItem>
      <author>Geoffrey Chaucer</author>
      <title>The Canterbury Tales</title>
    </msItem>
  </msContents>
  <physDesc>
    <objectDesc>
      <p>A parchment codex of 136 folios, measuring approx
        28 by 19 inches, and containing 24 quires.</p>
      <p>The pages are margined and ruled throughout.</p>
      <p>Four hands have been identified in the manuscript: the first 44
        folios being written in two cursive anglicana scripts, while the
        remainder is for the most part in a mixed secretary hand.</p>
    </objectDesc>
  </physDesc>
</msDesc>

```

<msIdentifier> (manuscript identifier) contains the information required to identify the manuscript being described. [10.4.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.biblPart

Contained by

core: bibl

msdescription: msDesc msPart

May contain

header: idno

msdescription: altIdentifier collection institution msName repository

namesdates: country settlement

Declaration

```

element msIdentifier
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    (
      model.placeNamePart_sequenceOptional,
      institution?,
      repository?,
      collection*,
      idno?
    ),
    ( msName | altIdentifier )*
  )
}

```

```

)
}

```

Schematron <s:report test="local-name(*[1])='idno' or local-name(*[1])='altIdentifier' or.=''">You must supply either a locator of some type or a name for <s:name/></s:report>

Example

```

<msIdentifier>
  <settlement>San Marino</settlement>
  <repository>Huntington Library</repository>
  <idno>MS.El.26.C.9</idno>
</msIdentifier>

```

<msItem> (manuscript item) describes an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.6.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.msExcerpt (@defective)

@class identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this item

Status Optional

Datatype 1-∞ occurrences of **data.pointer** separated by whitespace

Values One or more pointers indicating a classification for the item, as supplied for example by the <textClass> element.

Member of model.msItemPart

Contained by

msdescription: msContents msItem

May contain

core: author bibl biblStruct cb cit editor gap gb graphic index lb milestone note p pb quote textLang title

figures: figure notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: colophon decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric incipit locus locusGrp msItem msItemStruct rubric

textcrit: witDetail

textstructure: byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph imprimatur titlePart

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```

element msItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  attribute class { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  (

```

```

        ( locus | locusGrp )*,
        (
            model.pLike+
            | ( model.titlepagePart | model.msItemPart
              | model.global )+
            )
    )
}

```

Example

```

<msItem class="#saga">
  <locus>ff. 1r-24v</locus>
  <title>Agrid af Noregs konunga sögum</title>
  <incipit>regi oc h<ex>ann</ex> setiho
  <gap reason="illegible" extent="7"/>sc
    heim se<ex>m</ex> pio</incipit>
  <explicit>h<ex>on</ex> hev<ex>er</ex>
  <ex>oc</ex>þa buit hesta .ij. aNan vip
    fé enh<ex>on</ex>o<ex>m</ex> aNan til
    reip<ex>ar</ex>
  </explicit>
  <textLang mainLang="non">Old Norse/Icelandic</textLang>
</msItem>

```

<msItemStruct> (structured manuscript item) contains a structured description for an individual work or item within the intellectual content of a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.6.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.msExcerpt (@defective)

@class identifies the text types or classifications applicable to this item

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values One or more pointers indicating a classification for the item, as supplied for example by the <textClass> element.

Member of model.msItemPart

Contained by

msdescription: msContents msItem msItemStruct

May contain

core: author bibl biblStruct note p textLang title

msdescription: colophon decoNote explicit finalRubric incipit locus locusGrp msItemStruct rubric

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```

element msItemStruct
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.msExcerpt.attributes,

```

```

attribute class { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
(
  ( locus | locusGrp )?,
  (
    model.pLike+
    | (
      author*,
      respStmt*,
      title*,
      rubric?,
      incipit?,
      msItemStruct*,
      explicit?,
      finalRubric?,
      colophon*,
      decoNote*,
      listBibl*,
      ( bibl | biblStruct )*,
      model.noteLike*,
      textLang?
    )
  )
)
}

```

Example

```

<msItemStruct n="2" defective="false" class="biblComm">
  <locus from="24v" to="97v">24v-97v</locus>
  <author>Apringius de Beja</author>
  <title type="uniform" xml:lang="la">Tractatus in Apocalypsin</title>
  <rubric>Incipit Trac<supplied reason="omitted">ta</supplied>tus
    in apoka<lb/>lipsin eruditissimi uiri <lb/> Apringi
  ep<expan>iscop</expan>i
    Pacensis eccl<expan>esi</expan>e</rubric>
  <finalRubric>EXPLIC<ex>IT</ex> EXPO<lb/>SITIO APOCALIPSIS
    QVA<ex>M</ex> EXPOSVIT DOM<lb/>NVS APRINGIUS EP<ex>ISCOPU</ex>S.
    DEO GR<ex>ACI</ex>AS AGO. FI<lb/>NITO LABORE ISTO.</finalRubric>
  <bibl>
    <ref target="http://amiBibl.xml#Apringius1900">Apringius</ref>, ed.
    Férotin</bibl>
  <textLang mainLang="la">Latin</textLang>
</msItemStruct>

```

<msName> (alternative name) contains any form of unstructured alternative name used for a manuscript, such as an “ocellus nominum”, or nickname. [10.4.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: msIdentifier

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element msName { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

Example

```
<msName>The Vercelli Book</msName>
```

<msPart> (manuscript part) contains information about an originally distinct manuscript or part of a manuscript, now forming part of a composite manuscript.
[10.10.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: msDesc msPart

May contain

core: head p

msdescription: additional altIdentifier history msContents msIdentifier msPart physDesc

Declaration

```
element msPart
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( altIdentifier | msIdentifier ),
    model.headLike*,
    (
      model.pLike+
      | ( msContents?, physDesc?, history?, additional?, msPart* )
    )
  )
}
```

Example

```
<msPart>
  <msIdentifier>
    <idno>A</idno>
    <altIdentifier type="catalog">
      <collection>Becker</collection>
      <idno>48, Nr. 145</idno>
    </altIdentifier>
    <altIdentifier type="catalog">
      <collection>Wiener Liste</collection>
      <idno>4°5</idno>
    </altIdentifier>
  </msIdentifier>
  <head>
    <title xml:lang="la">Gregorius: Homiliae in Ezechielem</title>
    <origPlace key="tgn_7008085">Weissenburg (?)</origPlace>
```

```
<origDate notBefore="0801" notAfter="0815">IX. Jh., Anfang</origDate>
</head>
</msPart>
```

Example

```
<msDesc>
  <msIdentifier>
    <settlement>Amiens</settlement>
    <repository>Bibliothèque Municipale</repository>
    <idno>MS 3</idno>
    <msName>Maurdramus Bible</msName>
  </msIdentifier>
  <!-- other elements here -->
  <msPart>
    <altIdentifier>
      <idno>MS 6</idno>
    </altIdentifier>
  <!-- other information specific to this part here -->
  </msPart>
  <!-- more parts here -->
</msDesc>
```

Note As this last example shows, for compatibility reasons the identifier of a manuscript part may be supplied as a simple <altIdentifier> rather than using the more structured <msIdentifier> element. This usage is however deprecated.

<musicNotation> contains description of type of musical notation. [10.7.2.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset

orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element musicNotation { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

Example

```
<musicNotation>
<p>Square notation of 4-line red staves.</p>
</musicNotation>
```

Example

```
<musicNotation>Neumes in <term>campo aperto</term> of the St. Gall type.
</musicNotation>
```

<nameLink> (name link) contains a connecting phrase or link used within a name but not regarded as part of it, such as *van der* or *of*. [13.2.1.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.persNamePart

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign
head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker
stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element nameLink
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<persName>
  <forename>Frederick</forename>
  <nameLink>van der</nameLink>
  <surname>Tronck</surname>
</persName>
```

Example

```
<persName>
  <forename>Alfred</forename>
  <nameLink>de</nameLink>
  <surname>Musset</surname>
</persName>
```

<nationality> contains an informal description of a person's present or past nationality or citizenship. [15.2.2.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore,
@notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso,
@from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom,

(*@notAfter-custom*, *@from-custom*, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*)
att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@source*, *@instant*) (*att.dimensions* (*@unit*, *@quantity*,
@extent, *@precision*, *@scope*) (*att.ranging* (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*,
@confidence))) (*att.responsibility* (*@cert*, *@resp*)) *att.naming* (*@role*, *@nymRef*)
(*att.canonical* (*@key*, *@ref*))

Member of model.persStateLike

Contained by

namesdates: person personGrp

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element nationality
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<nationality key="US" notBefore="1966"> Obtained US Citizenship in
1966</nationality>

```

<**normalization**> indicates the extent of normalization or regularization of the original source carried out in converting it to electronic form. [2.3.3. 15.3.2.]

Module header

Attributes *Attributes* *att.global* (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(*att.global.linking* (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (*att.global.analytic* (*@ana*)) (*att.global.facs* (*@facs*)) (*att.global.change*
(*@change*)) *att.declarable* (*@default*)

@source indicates the authority for any normalization carried out.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values Points to a bibliographic description or other resource documenting the principles underlying the normalization which has been applied.

@method indicates the method adopted to indicate normalizations within the text.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **silent** normalization made silently [Default]
markup normalization represented using markup

Member of model.editorialDeclPart

Contained by

header: editorialDecl

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element normalization
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  attribute source { data.pointer }?,
  attribute method { "silent" | "markup" }?,
  model.pLike+
}
```

Example

```
<editorialDecl>
  <normalization method="markup">
    <p>Where both upper- and lower-case i, j, u, v, and vv have been
normalized, to modern
    20th century typographical practice, the <gi>choice</gi> element has
been used to
    enclose <gi>orig</gi> and <gi>reg</gi> elements giving the original
and new values
    respectively. ... </p>
  </normalization>
  <normalization method="silent">
    <p>Spacing between words and following punctuation has been regularized
to zero spaces;
    spacing between words has been regularized to one space.</p>
  </normalization>
  <normalization source="http://www.dict.sztaki.hu/webster">
    <p>Spelling converted throughout to Modern American usage, based on
Websters 9th
    Collegiate dictionary.</p>
  </normalization>
</editorialDecl>
```

<notatedMusic> encodes the presence of music notation in a text

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.placement (@place) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.global

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan
 foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
 reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue
 role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
 material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance
 rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
 genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person
 residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
 docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute
 signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: graphic label ref

Declaration

```

element notatedMusic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( model.labelLike | model.ptrLike | graphic | binaryObject )*
}

```

Example

```

<notatedMusic>
  <ptr target="bar1.xml"/>
  <graphic url="bar1.jpg"/>
  <desc>First bar of Chopin's Scherzo No.3 Op.39</desc>
</notatedMusic>

```

Note It is possible to describe the content of the notation using elements from the model.labelLike class and it is possible to point to an external representation using elements from model.ptrLike. It is possible to specify the location of digital objects representing the notated music in other media such as images or audio-visual files.

The encoder's interpretation of the correspondence between the notated music and these digital objects is not encoded explicitly. We recommend the use of graphic and binaryObject mainly as a fallback mechanism when the notated music format is not displayable by the application using the encoding. The alignment of encoded notated music, images carrying the notation, and audio files is a complex matter for which we refer the encoder to other formats and specifications such as MPEG-SMR.

<note> contains a note or annotation. [3.8.1. 2.2.6. 3.11.2.7. 9.3.5.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributesatt.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)

att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select) att.global.facs (@facs) att.global.change (@change) att.pointing (target, @targetLang, @evaluate) att.responsibility (resp, @cert) att.typed (type, @subtype)

@place (The place of the note should be specified whenever the note refers to a note present in the original text. The current text is a simplified version of the P5 one) specifies where this item is placed

Derived from att.placement

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by whitespace

Legal values are: **margin**

other

app

foot

end

inline

interlinear

@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References

Derived from att.pointing

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

@resp (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

Derived from att.responsibility

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values A pointer to an element typically, but not necessarily, in the document header that is associated with a person asserted as

responsible for some aspect of the text's creation, transcription, editing, or encoding.

@type (The place of the note must be specified. The current text is a simplified version of the P5 one) characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **annotation**

gloss

citation

other

@anchored indicates whether the copy text shows the exact place of reference for the note.

Status Optional

Datatype data.truthValue

Default true

Note In modern texts, notes are usually anchored by means of explicit footnote or endnote symbols. An explicit indication of the phrase or line annotated may however be used instead (e.g. "page 218, lines 3–4"). The anchored attribute indicates whether any explicit location is given, whether by symbol or by prose cross-reference. The value true indicates that such an explicit location is indicated in the copy text; the value false indicates that the copy text does not indicate a specific place of attachment for the note. If the specific symbols used in the copy text at the location the note is anchored are to be recorded, use the n attribute.

Member of model.noteLike

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl biblStruct cit citedRange corr date editor emph
 expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list monogr note orig p pubPlace
 publisher q quote ref reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue
 role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

gaiji: char glyph

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence notesStmt scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions adminInfo altIdentifier catchwords collation
 colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation
 heraldry incipit layout material msItem msItemStruct musicNotation objectType
 origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary
 support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth climate country death education event faith
 floruit forename genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation org
 orgName persName person place population residence roleName sex socecStatus
 surname terrain trait

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail
textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer
transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus
verse: rhyme
May contain
analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view
figures: figure formula notatedMusic table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait
textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo
verse: caesura rhyme
Declaration

```
element note
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.style,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.global.change.attribute.change,
  att.pointing.attribute.targetLang,
  att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,
  att.responsibility.attribute.cert,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute place
  {
    list
    {
      (
```

```

        "margin"
        | "other"
        | "app"
        | "foot"
        | "end"
        | "inline"
        | "interlinear"
    )+
}
}?,
attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
attribute resp { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
attribute type { "annotation" | "gloss" | "citation" | "other" }?,
attribute anchored { data.truthValue }?,
macro.specialPara}

```

Example In the following example, the translator has supplied a footnote containing an explanation of the term translated as "painterly":

And yet it is not only
in the great line of Italian renaissance art, but even in the
painterly **<note place="bottom" type="gloss" resp="#MDMH">**
<term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>. This word has, in the German, two
distinct meanings, one objective, a quality residing in the object,
the other subjective, a mode of apprehension and creation. To avoid
confusion, they have been distinguished in English as
<mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and
<mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively.
</note> style of the
Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that drapery has this
psychological significance.

For this example to be valid, the code MDMH must be defined elsewhere, for
example by means of a responsibility statement in the associated TEI Header:

```

<respStmt xml:id="MDMH">
  <resp>translation from German to English</resp>
  <name>Hottinger, Marie Donald Mackie</name>
</respStmt>

```

Example The global n attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to
mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the
family during the second half of the eleventh century,
<note n="126" anchored="true"> The
alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from 1071 is, in fact,
a reference to
Judah's children; cf. above, nn. 111 and 54. **</note>** is well known from
Geniza documents
published by Jacob Mann.

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be
reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered
unnecessary to record the note numbers.

<notesStmt> (notes statement) collects together any notes providing information
about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic
description. [2.2.6. 2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: note

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element notesStmt { att.global.attributes, model.noteLike+ }
```

Example

```
<notesStmt>
  <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>
  <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note>
</notesStmt>
```

Note Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.

<nym> (canonical name) contains the definition for a canonical name or name component of any kind. [13.3.5.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey)

@parts points to constituent nyms

Status Optional

Datatype 1-∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Member of

namesdates: listNym nym

May contain

core: p

dictionaries: def etym form gramGrp pos re sense subc superEntry usg xr

namesdates: nym

Declaration

```
element nym
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute parts { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
}
```

```
( ( model.entryPart* ), ( model.pLike* ), ( nym* ) )  
}
```

Example

```
<nym xml:id="J452">  
  <form>  
    <orth xml:lang="en-US">Ian</orth>  
    <orth xml:lang="en-x-Scots">Iain</orth>  
  </form>  
</nym>
```

<objectDesc> contains a description of the physical components making up the object which is being described. [10.7.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@form a short project-specific name identifying the physical form of the carrier, for example as a codex, roll, fragment, partial leaf, cutting etc.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Values a short project-defined name

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

core: p

msdescription: layoutDesc supportDesc

Declaration

```
element objectDesc  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  attribute form { data.enumerated }?,  
  ( model.pLike+ | ( supportDesc?, layoutDesc? ) )  
}
```

Example

```
<objectDesc form="codex">  
  <supportDesc material="mixed">  
    <p>Early modern  
    <material>parchment</material> and  
    <material>paper</material>.</p>  
  </supportDesc>  
  <layoutDesc>  
    <layout ruledLines="25 32"/>  
  </layoutDesc>  
</objectDesc>
```

<objectType> contains a word or phrase describing the type of object being referred to. [10.3.2.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.canonical (@key, @ref)

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element objectType
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<physDesc>
  <p> Paper and vellum <objectType>codex</objectType> in modern cloth
  binding.</p>
</physDesc>
```

Example

```
<physDesc>
  <p>Fragment of a re-used marble <objectType>funerary stele</objectType>.
</p>
</physDesc>
```

Note The ref attribute may be used to point to one or more items within a taxonomy of types of object, defined either internally or externally.

<occupation> contains an informal description of a person's trade, profession or occupation. [15.2.2.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

@scheme identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use by supplying the identifier of a <taxonomy> element typically but not necessarily elsewhere in the current document header.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Values must identify a <taxonomy> element

@code identifies an occupation code defined within the classification system or taxonomy defined by the scheme attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Values Must identify a <category> element

Member of model.persStateLike

Contained by

namesdates: person personGrp

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element occupation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
  attribute code { data.pointer }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<occupation>accountant</occupation>
```

Example

```
<occupation scheme="#occupationtaxonomy" code="#acc">accountant</occupation>
```

Note The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification.

<offset> marks that part of a relative temporal or spatial expression which indicates the direction of the offset between the two place names, dates, or times involved in the expression. [13.2.3.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.offsetLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign
head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker
stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation org orgName
persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element offset { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

Example

```
<pPlaceName key="NRPA1">  
  <offset>50 metres below the summit of</offset>  
  <geogName>  
    <geogFeat>Mount</geogFeat>  
    <name>Sinai</name>  
  </geogName>  
</pPlaceName>
```

<opener> groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter. [4.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.divTopPart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue

textstructure: body div group postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title
figures: formula notatedMusic
gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
 location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
 surname terrain trait
textcrit: app witDetail
textstructure: byline dateline epigraph salute signed
transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
 undo
verse: caesura rhyme
Declaration

```

element opener
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase    | argument
    | byline          | dateline      | epigraph    | salute      | signed      | model.global  )*
}

```

Example

```

<opener>
<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
</opener>

```

Example

```

<opener>
<dateline>
  <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>
  <date>November 11, 1848</date>
</dateline>
<salute>My dear Sir,</salute>
</opener>
<p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other circumstances have
prevented me from
earlier enquiring...</p>

```

<org> (organization) provides information about an identifiable organization such as a business, a tribe, or any other grouping of people. [13.2.2.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,

@select) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@source*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) (att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.sortable (*@sortKey*)

@role specifies a primary role or classification for the organization.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values one or more keywords separated by spaces

Member of model.personLike

Contained by

namesdates: listOrg listPerson org

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct head label note p rs

header: biblFull idno

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: addName climate country forename genName geogFeat listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset org orgName persName person personGrp place population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```

element org
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute role { list { data.word+ } }?,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    (
      ( model.pLike* )
      | ( model.labellike | model.nameLike | model.placeLike
        | model.orgPart )*
    ),
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike | linkGrp | link )*,
    model.personLike*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<org xml:id="JAMs">
  <orgName>Justified Ancients of Mummu</orgName>
  <desc>An underground anarchist collective spearheaded by <persName>Hagbard
    Celine</persName>, who fight the Illuminati from a golden submarine,
  the
  <name>Leif Ericson</name>
</desc>
<bibl>
  <author>Robert Shea</author>
  <author>Robert Anton Wilson</author>
  <title>The Illuminatus! Trilogy</title>

```


</bibl>
</org>

Note May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the `model.personPart` class.

<orgName> (organization name) contains an organizational name. [13.2.2.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@style`, `@xml:space`)
(`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`,
`@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change`
(`@change`)) `att.datable` (`@calendar`, `@period`) (`att.datable.w3c` (`@when`, `@notBefore`,
`@notAfter`, `@from`, `@to`)) (`att.datable.iso` (`@when-iso`, `@notBefore-iso`, `@notAfter-iso`,
`@from-iso`, `@to-iso`)) (`att.datable.custom` (`@when-custom`, `@notBefore-custom`,
`@notAfter-custom`, `@from-custom`, `@to-custom`, `@datingPoint`, `@datingMethod`))
`att.editLike` (`@evidence`, `@source`, `@instant`) (`att.dimensions` (`@unit`, `@quantity`,
`@extent`, `@precision`, `@scope`) (`att.ranging` (`@atLeast`, `@atMost`, `@min`, `@max`,
`@confidence`))) (`att.responsibility` (`@cert`, `@resp`)) `att.personal` (`@full`, `@sort`)
(`att.naming` (`@role`, `@nymRef`) (`att.canonical` (`@key`, `@ref`))) `att.typed` (`@type`,
`@subtype`)

Member of `model.nameLike.agent`

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign
head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker
stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamarck mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g
header: idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait
textcrit: app witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo
verse: caesura rhyme
Declaration

```
element orgName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
About a year back, a question of considerable interest was agitated in the
<orgName key="PAS1" type="voluntary">
  <placeName key="PEN">Pennsyla.</placeName> Abolition Society
</orgName>....
```

<orig> (original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected. [3.4.2. 12.]

Module core

Member of model.choicePart

Contained by

core: choice

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration `element orig { macro.paraContent }`

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text,
<orig> may be used alone:

```
<l>But this will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
</l>
```

Example More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a
<choice> element:

```
<l>But this will be a <choice>
  <orig>meere</orig>
  <reg>mere</reg>
</choice> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <choice>
  <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
  <reg>understood</reg>
</choice>
</l>
```

<origDate> (origin date) contains any form of date, used to identify the date of origin
for a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.3.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore,
@notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso,
@from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom,
@notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity,
@extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max,
@confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item
l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence
roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element origDate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}
```

Example

```
<origDate notBefore="-0300" notAfter="-0200">3rd century BCE</origDate>
```

<origPlace> (origin place) contains any form of place name, used to identify the place of origin for a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.3.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.datable
(@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from,
@to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso,
@to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom,
@notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity,
@extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max,
@confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item
l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence
roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element origPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<origPlace>Birmingham</origPlace>
```

Note The type attribute may be used to distinguish different kinds of “origin”, for example original place of publication, as opposed to original place of printing.

<origin> contains any descriptive or other information concerning the origin of a manuscript or manuscript part. [10.8.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit,
@quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min,
@max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.dataable (@calendar,
@period) (att.dataable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to))
(att.dataable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso))
(att.dataable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom,
@from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: history

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element origin
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```

<origin
  notBefore="1802"
  notAfter="1845"
  evidence="internal"
  resp="#AMH">Copied in <name type="origPlace">Derby</name>, probably from
an
old Flemish original, between 1802 and 1845, according to
<persName xml:id="AMH">Anne-Mette Hansen</persName>.
</origin>

```

<p> (paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose. [3.1. 7.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.fragmentable (@part)

Member of model.pLike

Contained by

core: item note q quote sp stage

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue set view

figures: figure

header: availability calendar change editorialDecl encodingDesc handNote licence
normalization prefixDef publicationStmt scriptNote seriesStmt sourceDesc
styleDefDecl typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions binding bindingDesc collation condition
custEvent custodialHist decoDesc decoNote filiation foliation handDesc history
layout layoutDesc msContents msDesc msItem msItemStruct msPart musicNotation
objectDesc origin physDesc provenance recordHist scriptDesc seal sealDesc source
support supportDesc surrogates typeDesc

namesdates: climate event langKnowledge listRelation nym org person personGrp place
population relationGrp terrain trait

textstructure: body div epigraph postscript

transcr: metamark

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element p
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.fragmentable.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<p>Hallgerd was outside. <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said.
<q>What have you
  done?</q>
</p>
<p>
  <q>I have now arranged that you can be married a second time,</q> replied
  Thjostolf.
</p>
<p>
  <q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is dead,</q> she said.
</p>
<p>
  <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf. <q>And now you must think up some plan for
  me.</q>
</p>

```

<pb/> (page break) marks the boundary between one page of a text and the next in a standard reference system. [3.10.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.edition (@ed, @edRef) att.spanning
(@spanTo) att.breaking (@break)

Member of model.milestoneLike

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan
foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def entry etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element pb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.edition.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.breaking.attributes,
  empty
}
```

Example Page numbers may vary in different editions of a text.

```
<p> ... <pb n="145" ed="ed2"/>
<!-- Page 145 in edition "ed2" starts here --> ... <pb n="283" ed="ed1"/>
<!-- Page 283 in edition "ed1" starts here--> ... </p>
```

Example A page break may be associated with a facsimile image of the page it introduces by means of the facs attribute

```

<body>
  <pb n="1" facs="page1.png"/>
  <!-- page1.png contains an image of the page; the text it contains is
  encoded here -->
  <p>
  <!-- ... -->
  </p>
  <pb n="2" facs="page2.png"/>
  <!-- similarly, for page 2 -->
  <p>
  <!-- ... -->
  </p>
</body>

```

Note By convention, <pb> elements should appear at the start of the page to which they refer. The global *n* attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the page which follows. This will normally be the page number or signature printed on it, since the physical sequence number is implicit in the presence of the <pb> element itself. The type attribute may be used to characterize the page break in any respect, for example as word-breaking or not.

<pc> (punctuation character) contains a character or string of characters regarded as constituting a single punctuation mark. [17.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.links (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.segLike (@function) (att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme)) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) (att.fragmentable (@part)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

@force indicates the extent to which this punctuation mark conventionally separates words or phrases

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **strong** the punctuation mark is a word separator

weak the punctuation mark is not a word separator

inter the punctuation mark may or may not be a word separator

@unit provides a name for the kind of unit delimited by this punctuation mark.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

@pre indicates whether this punctuation mark precedes or follows the unit it delimits.

Status Optional

Datatype data.truthValue

Member of model.segLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell

header: change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName
sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c

core: choice

gaiji: g

textcrit: app

transcr: mod redo retrace surplus undo

Declaration

```
element pc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute force { "strong" | "weak" | "inter" }?,
  attribute unit { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute pre { data.truthValue }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | c | model.pPart.edit ) *
}
```

Example

```
<phr>
  <w>do</w>
  <w>you</w>
  <w>understand</w>
  <pc type="interrogative">?</pc>
</phr>
```

<performance> contains a section of front or back matter describing how a dramatic piece is to be performed in general or how it was performed on some specific occasion. [7.1.3. 7.1.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*))

2 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

Member of model.frontPart.drama

Contained by

textstructure: back front

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap gb head index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q
quote sp stage

dictionaries: entry superEntry

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation relationGrp

textcrit: listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute
signed trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element performance
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<performance>
  <p>
    <rs type="place">Gateway Theatre, Edinburgh</rs>, <date>6 September
1948</date>
    <castList>
      <castItem>
        <role>Anath Bithiah</role>
        <actor>Athene Seyler</actor>
      </castItem>
      <castItem>
        <role>Shendi</role>
        <actor>Robert Rietty</actor>
      </castItem>
    </castList>
  </p>
  <p>Directed by <name>E. Martin Browne</name>
</p>
</performance>
```

Example

```
<performance>
  <p>Cast of the original production at the <rs type="place">Savoy Theatre,
```

```
London,</rs> on
  <date>September 24, 1907</date>
  <castList>
    <castItem>Colonel Hope : Mr A.E.George</castItem>
  </castList>
</p>
</performance>
```

Note contains paragraphs and an optional cast list only.

<persName> (personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including one or more of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc. [13.2.1.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.nameLike.agent model.persStateLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName person personGrp residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element persName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.databl.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```

<persName>
  <forename>Edward</forename>
  <forename>George</forename>
  <surname type="linked">Bulwer-Lytton</surname>, <roleName>Baron Lytton of
  <placeName>Knebworth</placeName>
</roleName>
</persName>

```

<person> provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source. [15.2.2.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit,
@quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min,
@max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

Role specifies a primary role or classification for the person.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by whitespace

Values the value should be chosen from a set of user-defined and user-documented keywords declared in the customization file

@sex specifies the sex of the person.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.sex`

@age specifies an age group for the person.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Values the value should be chosen from a set of user-defined and user-documented keywords declared in the customization file; possibilities include infant, child, teen, adult, and senior.

Member of model.personLike

Contained by

namesdates: listPerson org

May contain

core: bibl cb gap gb index lb milestone note p pb

figures: notatedMusic

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

namesdates: affiliation age birth death education event faith floruit langKnowledge listEvent nationality occupation persName residence sex socecStatus trait

textcrit: witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element person
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute role { list { data.enumerated+ } }?,
  attribute sex { data.sex }?,
  attribute age { data.enumerated }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( model.personPart | model.global ) * )
}
```

Example

```
<person sex="2" age="adult">
  <p>Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire UK, 12 Jan 1950,
of unknown occupation. Speaks French fluently. Socio-Economic
status B2.</p>
</person>
```

Example

```
<person xml:id="Ovi01" sex="1" role="poet">
  <persName xml:lang="en">Ovid</persName>
  <persName xml:lang="la">Publius Ovidius Naso</persName>
```

```
<birth when="-0044-03-20"> 20 March 43 BC <placeName>
  <settlement type="city">Sulmona</settlement>
  <country key="IT">Italy</country>
</placeName>
</birth>
<death notBefore="0017" notAfter="0018">17 or 18 AD <placeName>
  <settlement type="city">Tomis (Constanta)</settlement>
  <country key="RO">Romania</country>
</placeName>
</death>
</person>
```

Note May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the `model.personPart` class.

<personGrp> (personal group) describes a group of individuals treated as a single person for analytic purposes. [15.2.2.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@style`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`)) `att.sortable` (`@sortKey`)

@role specifies the role of this group of participants in the interaction.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Values the value should be chosen from a set of user-defined and user-documented keywords declared in the customization file

@sex specifies the sex of the participant group.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.sex | "mixed"`

@age specifies the age group of the participants.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Values the value should be chosen from a set of user-defined and user-documented keywords declared in the customization file

@size specifies the size or approximate size of the group.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values may contain a number and an indication of accuracy, e.g. approx 200

Member of `model.personLike`

Contained by

namesdates: listPerson org

May contain

core: bibl p

header: idno

namesdates: affiliation age birth death education event faith floruit langKnowledge listEvent nationality occupation persName residence sex socecStatus trait

Declaration

```
element personGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute role { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute sex { data.sex | "mixed" }?,
  attribute age { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute size { list { data.word+ } }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.personPart* )
}
```

Example

```
<personGrp
  xml:id="pg1"
  role="audience"
  sex="mixed"
  size="approx 50"/>
```

Note May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or any sequence of demographic elements in any combination. The global xml:id attribute should be used to identify each speaking participant in a spoken text if the who attribute is specified on individual utterances.

<physDesc> (physical description) contains a full physical description of a manuscript or manuscript part, optionally subdivided using more specialized elements from the model.physDescPart class. [10.7.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: msDesc msPart

May contain

core: p

msdescription: accMat additions bindingDesc decoDesc handDesc musicNotation
objectDesc scriptDesc sealDesc typeDesc

Declaration

```
element physDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike*, ( model.physDescPart_sequenceOptional ) )
}
```

Example

```
<physDesc>
  <objectDesc form="codex">
    <supportDesc material="perg">
```

```

<support>Parchment.</support>
<extent>i + 55 leaves
<dimensions scope="all" type="leaf" unit="inch">
  <height>7¼</height>
  <width>5⅜</width>
</dimensions>
</extent>
</supportDesc>
<layoutDesc>
  <layout columns="2">In double columns.</layout>
</layoutDesc>
</objectDesc>
<handDesc>
  <p>Written in more than one hand.</p>
</handDesc>
<decoDesc>
  <p>With a few coloured capitals.</p>
</decoDesc>
</physDesc>

```

<place> contains data about a geographic location

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope)) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

Member of model.placeLike

Contained by

namesdates: listPlace org place

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct head label note p

header: biblFull idno

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: climate country event listPlace listRelation location place population relationGrp settlement terrain trait

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```

element place
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    (
      ( model.pLike* )
      | ( model.labellike | model.placeStateLike
        | model.placeEventLike )*
    )
  )
}

```

```
    ),  
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike | idno | linkGrp | link )*,  
    ( model.placeLike | listPlace )*  
  )  
}
```

Example

```
<place>  
  <country>Lithuania</country>  
  <country xml:lang="lt">Lietuva</country>  
  <place>  
    <settlement>Vilnius</settlement>  
  </place>  
  <place>  
    <settlement>Kaunas</settlement>  
  </place>  
</place>
```

<population> contains information about the population of a place.

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore,
@notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso,
@from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom,
@notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity,
@extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max,
@confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)
(att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.placeStateLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign
head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker
stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName place
population residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct head label note p

header: biblFull

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listRelation population relationGrp

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```
element population
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.headLike*,
    (
      ( ( model.pLike+ ) | ( model.labellike+ ) ),
      ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike ) *
    )?,
    population*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<population when="2001-04" resp="#UKCensus">
  <population type="white">
    <desc>54153898</desc>
  </population>
  <population type="asian">
    <desc>11811423</desc>
  </population>
  <population type="black">
    <desc>1148738</desc>
  </population>
  <population type="mixed">
    <desc>677117</desc>
  </population>
  <population type="chinese">
    <desc>247403</desc>
  </population>
  <population type="other">
    <desc>230615</desc>
  </population>
</population>
```

<pos> (part of speech) indicates the part of speech assigned to a dictionary headword such as noun, verb, or adjective. [9.3.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location,
@mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

Member of model.entryPart model.gramPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: form gramGrp

namesdates: nym

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element pos
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>isotope</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>adj</pos>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>

```

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change))

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: epilogue performance prologue

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap gb head index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q
 quote sp stage

dictionaries: entry superEntry

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation relationGrp

textcrit: listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: closer opener postscript signed trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```

element postscript
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.global | model.divTopPart )*,
    ( model.common ),
    ( model.global | model.common )*,
    ( ( model.divBottomPart ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

Example

```

<div type="letter">
  <opener>
    <dateline>
      <placeName>Rimaone</placeName>
      <date when="2006-11-21">21 Nov 06</date>
    </dateline>
    <salute>Dear Susan,</salute>
  </opener>
  <p>Thank you very much for the assistance splitting those
  logs. I'm sorry about the misunderstanding as to the size of
  the task. I really was not asking for help, only to borrow the
  axe. Hope you had fun in any case.</p>
  <closer>

```

```
<salute>Sincerely yours,</salute>
<signed>Seymour</signed>
</closer>
<postscript>
  <label>P.S.</label>
  <p>The collision occurred on <date when="2001-07-06">06 Jul 01</date>.</p>
</postscript>
</div>
```

<prefixDef> (prefixing scheme used in data.pointer values) defines a prefixing scheme used in data.pointer values, showing how abbreviated URIs using the scheme may be expanded into full URIs. [16.2.3.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.patternReplacement (@matchPattern, @replacementPattern)

@ident supplies the identifier which functions as the prefix for an abbreviated pointing scheme such as a private URI scheme. The prefix constitutes the text preceding the first colon.

Status Required

Datatype data.name

Values an XML name

Members contained by

header: listPrefixDef

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element prefixDef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.patternReplacement.attributes,
  attribute ident { data.name },
  model.pLike*
}
```

Example

```
<prefixDef
  ident="ref"
  matchPattern="[a-z]+"
  replacementPattern="../../references/references.xml#$1">
  <p> In the context of this project, private URIs with
  the prefix "ref" point to <gi>div</gi> elements in
  the project's global references.xml file.
  </p>
</prefixDef>
```

Note Where matchPattern and replacementPattern are both supplied, the abbreviated pointer may be dereferenced to produce either an absolute or a relative URI

reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of `xml:base` in force at the place where the `cRef` attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by XML Base.

<profileDesc> (text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting. [2.4.2.1.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@style`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`))

Member of `model.teiHeaderPart`

Contained by

header: `teiHeader`

May contain

header: `calendarDesc`

transcr: `handNotes` `listTranspose`

Declaration

```
element profileDesc { att.global.attributes, ( model.profileDescPart* ) }
```

Example

```
<profileDesc>
  <langUsage>
    <language ident="fr">French</language>
  </langUsage>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
    <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
  </textDesc>
  <settingDesc>
    <setting>
      <name>Paris, France</name>
      <time>Late 19th century</time>
    </setting>
  </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

Note Although the content model permits it, it is rarely meaningful to supply multiple occurrences for any of the child elements of `<profileDesc>`. In earlier versions of these Guidelines, it was required that the `<creation>` element appear first.

<prologue> contains the prologue to a drama, typically spoken by an actor out of character, possibly in association with a particular performance or venue. [7.1.2. 7.1.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.frontPart.drama

Contained by

textstructure: back front

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap gb head index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote sp stage

dictionaries: entry superEntry

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation relationGrp

textcrit: listApp listWit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph opener postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element prologue
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    ( model.divTop | model.global )*,
    ( ( model.common ), model.global* )+,
    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

Example

```
<prologue>
  <sp>
    <l>Wits, like physicians never can agree,</l>
    <l>When of a different society.</l>
    <l>New plays are stuffed with wits, and with deboches,</l>
    <l>That crowd and sweat like cits in May-Day coaches.</l>
  </sp>
  <trailer>Written by a person of quality</trailer>
</prologue>
```

<provenance> contains any descriptive or other information concerning a single identifiable episode during the history of a manuscript or manuscript part, after its creation but before its acquisition. [10.8.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: history

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element provenance
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<provenance>Listed as the property of Lawrence Sterne in 1788.</provenance>
<provenance>Sold at Sothebys in 1899.</provenance>
```

<pubPlace> (publication place) contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published. [3.11.2.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart

Contained by

core: bibl imprint

header: publicationStmt

textstructure: docImprint

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element pubPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Oxford University Press</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <date>1989</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

<publicationStmt> (publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text. [2.2.4. 2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: address date p pubPlace publisher

header: authority availability idno

Declaration

```
element publicationStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.publicationStmtPart+ )
}
```

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>C. Muquardt </publisher>
  <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
  <date when="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

Example

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Available under licence only</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

Note Although not enforced by the schemas, it is a requirement for TEI conformance that information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given in that order, following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned

<publisher> provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item. [3.11.2.3. 2.2.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*))

Member of model.imprintPart model.publicationStmtPart

Contained by

core: bibl imprint

header: publicationStmt

textstructure: docImprint

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element publisher { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

Note Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

<q> (quoted) contains material which is distinguished from the surrounding text using quotation marks or a similar method, for any one of a variety of reasons including, but not limited to: direct speech or thought, technical terms or jargon, authorial distance, quotations from elsewhere, and passages that are mentioned but not used. [3.3.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) att.ascribed (*@who*) att.source (*@source*)

@type may be used to indicate whether the offset passage is spoken or thought, or to characterize it more finely.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **spoken** representation of speech

thought representation of thought, e.g. internal monologue
written quotation from a written source
soCalled authorial distance
foreign (foreign words)
distinct (linguistically distinct)
term (technical term)
emph (rhetorically emphasized)
mentioned referring to itself, not its normal referant

Member of model.qLike

Contained by

core: cit corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
 label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
 orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
 trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
 undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element q
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,

```

```

attribute type
{
  "spoken"
  | "thought"
  | "written"
  | "soCalled"
  | "foreign"
  | "distinct"
  | "term"
  | "emph"
  | "mentioned"
  | xsd:Name
}?,
macro.specialPara}

```

Example

It is spelled <q>Tübingen</q> – to enter the letter <q>u</q> with an umlaut hold down the <q>option</q> key and press <q>0 0 f c</q>

Note May be used to indicate that a passage is distinguished from the surrounding text for reasons concerning which no claim is made. When used in this manner, <q> may be thought of as syntactic sugar for <hi> with a value of rend that indicates the use of such mechanisms as quotation marks.

<quote> (quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text. [3.3.3. 4.3.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.msExcerpt (@defective) att.source (@source)

Member of model.quoteLike

Contained by

core: cit corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout msItem musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element quote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.msExcerpt.attributes,
  att.source.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the
work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized in his
slogan, <quote>You shall know a word by the company it
keeps</quote>
<ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>
```

Note If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.

<rdg> (reading) contains a single reading within a textual variation. [12.1.]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.textCritical (@type, @cause, @varSeq, @hand) (att.responsibility
(@cert, @resp)) att.witnessed (@wit)

Member of model.rdgLike

Contained by

textcrit: app rdgGrp

May contain

analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
label lb list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: formula notatedMusic table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait
textcrit: app lacunaEnd lacunaStart listApp listWit wit witDetail witEnd witStart
transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo
verse: caesura rhyme
Declaration

```
element rdg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.textCritical.attributes,
  att.witnessed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter
    | model.global    | model.rdgPart   )*
```

Example

```
<rdg wit="#Ra2">Eryment</rdg>
```

<rdgGrp> (reading group) within a textual variation, groups two or more readings perceived to have a genetic relationship or other affinity. [12.1.]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.textCritical (@type, @cause, @varSeq, @hand) (att.responsibility
(@cert, @resp))

Member of

Contained by

textcrit: app rdgGrp

May contain

textcrit: lem rdg rdgGrp wit

Declaration

```

element rdgGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.textCritical.attributes,
  ( ( ( rdgGrp, wit? ) | ( ( lem, wit? )?, ( model.rdgLike, wit? ) ) * ) + )
}

```

Example

```

<app>
  <lem wit="#El #Ra2">though</lem>
  <rdgGrp type="orthographic">
    <rdg wit="#Hg">thogh</rdg>
    <rdg wit="#La">thouhe</rdg>
  </rdgGrp>
</app>

```

Note May contain readings and nested reading groups. Note that only one <lem> element may appear within a single apparatus entry, whether it appears outside a <rdgGrp> element or within it.

<re> (related entry) contains a dictionary entry for a lexical item related to the headword, such as a compound phrase or derived form, embedded inside a larger entry. [9.3.6.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.entryPart model.entryPart.top

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: re sense

namesdates: nym

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

dictionaries: def etym form gramGrp re sense usg xr

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element re
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | sense      | model.entryPart.top
    | model.phrase     | model.global  ) *
}

```

Example The following example from *Webster's New Collegiate Dictionary* (Springfield, Mass.: G. & C. Merriam Company, 1975) shows a single related entry for which no definition is given, since its meaning is held to be readily derivable from the root entry:

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>neu·ral</orth>
    <pron>'n(y)ūr-əl</pron>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <pos>adj</pos>
  </gramGrp>
  <sense n="1">
    <def>of, relating to, or affecting a nerve or the nervous system</def>
  </sense>
  <sense n="2"> ... </sense>
  <re>
    <form>
      <orth>neurally</orth>
      <pron extent="suffix">-ə-lē</pron>
    </form>
    <gramGrp>
      <pos>adv</pos>
    </gramGrp>
  </re>
</entry>

```

Example The following example from *Diccionario de la Universidad de Chicago Inglés-Español y Español-Inglés / The University of Chicago Spanish Dictionary, Fourth Edition, compiled by Carlos Castillo and Otto F. Bond* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1987) shows a number of related entries embedded in the main entry. The original entry resembles the following:

abeja [a · bé · xa]*f.* bee;**abejera** [a · be · xé · ra]*f.* beehive;**abejón**
[a · be · xóon]*m.* drone; bumblebee;**abejorro** [a · be · xó · rro]*m.* bumble
bee.

One encoding for this entry would be:

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>abeja</orth>

```

```

</form>
<gramGrp>
  <gen>f. </gen>
</gramGrp>
<sense n="1.">
  <usg type="domain"> (ento.) </usg>
  <def> bee </def>. </sense>
<sense n="2.">
  <def> busy bee, hard worker </def>. </sense>
<sense n="3.">
  <usg orig="A." type="domain"> (astron.) </usg>, <def> Musca </def> –
</sense>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. albanila"> abeja albanila </orth>, </form>
  <sense>
    <def>mason bee</def>;</sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. carpintera"> abeja carpintera </orth>, </form>
  <sense>
    <def>carpenter bee </def>;</sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth xml:id="re-o3" orig="a. reina or maestra"> abeja reina </orth>
    <orth mergedIn="#re-o4"> abeja maestra </orth>
  </form>
  <sense>
    <def> queen bee </def>;</sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth xml:id="re-o4" orig="a. neutra or obrera"> abeja neutra </orth>
    <orth mergedIn="#re-o3"> abeja obrera </orth>
  </form>
  <sense>
    <def>worker bee</def>.</sense>
</re>
</entry>

```

Example In the much larger Simon & Schuster Spanish-English dictionary (*Tana de Gámez, ed., Simon and Schuster's International Dictionary (New York: Simon and Schuster, 1973).*) these derived forms of *abeja* are treated as separate main entries, but there are other embedded phrases shown as <re>s in its main entry for *abeja*:

abeja, f. 1. (ento.) bee. 2. busy bee, hard worker. 3. (astron.) A., Musca.
 — a. albanila, mason bee; a. carpintera, carpenter bee; a. reina or maestra, queen bee; a. neutra or obrera, worker bee.

This entry may be encoded thus:

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>abeja</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <gen>f.</gen>
  </gramGrp>
  <sense n="1.">

```

```
<usg type="domain">(ento.)</usg>
<def>bee</def>. </sense>
<sense n="2.">
  <def>busy bee, hard worker</def>. </sense>
<sense n="3.">
  <usg orig="A." type="domain">(astron.)</usg>, <def>Musca</def> - </sense>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. albanila">abeja albanila</orth>, </form>
  <sense>
    <def>mason bee</def>; </sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth orig="a. carpintera">abeja carpintera</orth>, </form>
  <sense>
    <def>carpenter bee</def>; </sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth xml:id="re-o1" orig="a. reina or maestra">abeja reina</orth>
    <orth mergedIn="#re-o1">abeja maestra</orth>
  </form>
  <sense>
    <def>queen bee</def>; </sense>
</re>
<re>
  <form>
    <orth xml:id="re-o2" orig="a. neutra or obrera">abeja neutra</orth>
    <orth mergedIn="#re-o2">abeja obrera</orth>
  </form>
  <sense>
    <def>worker bee</def>. </sense>
</re>
</entry>
```

Note May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set. Identical in sub-elements to an <entry> tag, and used where a dictionary has embedded information inside one entry which could have formed a separate entry. Some authorities distinguish related entries, run-on entries, and various other types of degenerate entries; no such typology is attempted here.

<recordHist> (recorded history) provides information about the source and revision status of the parent manuscript description itself. [10.9.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: adminInfo

May contain

core: p

header: change

msdescription: source

Declaration

```

element recordHist
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( source, change* ) )
}

```

Example

```

<recordHist>
  <source>
    <p>Derived from <ref target="#IMEV">IMEV 123</ref> with additional
research
    by P.M.W.Robinson</p>
  </source>
  <change when="1999-06-23">
    <name>LDB</name> (editor)
    checked examples against DTD version 3.6
  </change>
</recordHist>

```

<redo/> indicates one or more cancelled interventions in a document which have subsequently been marked as reaffirmed or repeated.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status, @cause,
 @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant)) (att.dimensions (@unit,
 @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min,
 @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)))

@target points to one or more elements representing the interventions which are being reasserted.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc w

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
 item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
 textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell

header: change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout

material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark
namesdates: addName affiliation birth country death education faith floruit forename
 genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName
 sex socecStatus surname
textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: line metamark mod retrace surplus
verse: rhyme
May contain Empty element
Declaration

```

element redo
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  empty
}

```

Example

```

<line>
  <redo hand="#g_t" target="#redo-1" cause="fix"/>
  <mod
    xml:id="redo-1"
    rend="strikethrough"
    spanTo="#anchor-1"
    hand="#g_bl"/>Ihr hagren, triften,
krummgezog<mod rend="strikethrough">nen</mod>ener Nacken
</line>
<line>Wenn ihr nur piepfet ift die Welt fchon
matt.<anchor xml:id="anchor-1"/>
</line>

```

This encoding represents the following sequence of events:

- "Ihr hagren, triften, krummgezog nenener Nacken/ Wenn ihr nur piepfet ift die Welt fchon matt." is written
- the redundant letters "nen" in "nenener" are deleted
- the whole passage is deleted by hand **g_bl** using strikethrough
- the deletion is reasserted by another hand (identified here as **g_t**)

<ref> (takes the function of ref and ptr. Can therefore also be empty) defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment. [3.6. 16.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.internetMedia (@mimeType) att.pointing (target, evaluate, @targetLang) att.typed (type, @subtype)

@target (The target of this pointer / reference) specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References

Derived from att.pointing

Status Required

Datatype data.pointer

Values One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

Member of model.ptrLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author bibl biblStruct cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label monogr note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc notatedMusic

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element ref
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attribute.targetLang,
  att.internetMedia.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute target { data.pointer },
  macro.paraContent}

```

Schematron <s:report test="@target and @cRef">Only one of the attributes @target' and @cRef' may be supplied on <s:name/> </s:report>

Example

```

<ref
  target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2"> See especially the
second
sentence</ref> See also <ref>s.v. <term>locution</term>
</ref>.

```

Example

```

<ref
  target="http://www.natcorp.ox.ac.uk/Texts/A02.xml#s2"> See especially the
second
sentence</ref>

```

Example

```

See also <ref>s.v. <term>locution</term>
</ref>.

```

Note The target and cRef attributes are mutually exclusive.

<reg> (regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense. [3.4.2. 12.]

Module core

Member of model.choicePart

Contained by

core: choice

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration `element reg { macro.paraContent }`

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, `<reg>` may be used alone:

```
<q>Please <reg>knock</reg> if an <reg>answer</reg> is <reg>required</reg>
</q>
```

Example It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the `<choice>` and `<orig>` elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

```
<q>Please <choice>
  <reg resp="#LB">knock</reg>
  <orig>cnk</orig>
</choice> if an <choice>
  <reg>answer</reg>
  <orig>nsr</orig>
</choice> is <choice>
  <reg>required</reg>
  <orig>reqd</orig>
</choice>
</q>
```

<relation> (relationship) describes any kind of relationship or linkage amongst a specified group of objects, places, events or people. [15.2.2.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes `(@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)`

`(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.sortable (@sortKey)`

@type categorizes the relationship in some respect, e.g. as social, personal or other.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **social** relationship concerned with social roles
personal relationship concerned with personal roles, e.g. kinship, marriage, etc.[Default]
other other kinds of relationship

@name supplies a name for the kind of relationship of which this is an instance.

Status Required

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Values an open list of application-dependent keywords

@active identifies the “active” participants in a non-mutual relationship, or all the participants in a mutual one.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values a list of identifier values for participant or participant groups

@mutual supplies a list of participants amongst all of whom the relationship holds equally.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values a list of identifier values for participant or participant groups

@passive identifies the “passive” participants in a non-mutual relationship.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values a list of identifier values for participant or participant groups

Member of ~~Contained by~~

namespaces: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation relationGrp

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element relation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  attribute type { "social" | "personal" | "other" | xsd:Name }?,
  attribute name { data.enumerated },
  (
    attribute active { list { data.pointer+ } }?
    | attribute mutual { list { data.pointer+ } }?
  ),
  attribute passive { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  desc?
}
```

Schematron <s:report test=" @active and @mutual">Only one of the attributes @active and @mutual may be supplied</s:report>

Schematron <s:report test="@passive and not(@active)">the attribute 'passive' may be supplied only if the attribute 'active' is supplied</s:report>

Example

```
<relation
  type="social"
  name="supervisor"
  active="#p1"
  passive="#p2 #p3 #p4"/>
```

This indicates that the person with identifier p1 is supervisor of persons p2, p3, and p4.

Example

```
<relation type="personal" name="friends" mutual="#p2 #p3 #p4"/>
```

This indicates that p2, p3, and p4 are all friends.

Example

```
<relation
  type="CRM"
  name="P87_is_identified_by"
  active="http://id.clarosnet.org/places/ashmol/placecode/22584"
  passive="http://id.clarosnet.org/places/ashmol/placename/orvietto"/>
```

This indicates that there is a relation, defined by CIDOC CRM, between two resources identified by URLs.

Note Only one of the attributes active and mutual may be supplied; the attribute passive may be supplied only if the attribute active is supplied. Not all of these constraints can be enforced in all schema languages.

<relationGrp> (relation group) provides information about relationships identified amongst people, places, and organizations, either informally as prose or as formally expressed relation links. [15.2.2.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.sortable (@sortKey)

Member of model.biblLike

Contained by

core: cit corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

namesdates: climate event listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace location org place population terrain trait

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: p

namesdates: relation

Declaration

```
element relationGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | relation+ )
}
```

Example

```
<listPerson>
  <person xml:id="p1">
<!-- data about person p1 -->
  </person>
<!-- more person elements here -->
</listPerson>
<relationGrp type="personal">
  <relation name="parent" active="#p1 #p2" passive="#p3 #p4"/>
  <relation name="spouse" mutual="#p1 #p2"/>
</relationGrp>
<relationGrp type="social">
  <relation name="employer" active="#p1" passive="#p3 #p5 #p6 #p7"/>
</relationGrp>
```

The persons with identifiers p1 and p2 are the parents of p3 and p4; they are also married to each other; p1 is the employer of p3, p5, p6, and p7.

Example

```
<relationGrp>
<p>All speakers are members of the Ceruli family, born in Naples.</p>
</relationGrp>
```

Note May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of <relation> elements. This element is retained for reasons of backwards compatibility, but is deprecated and will be removed at a later release. The element <listRelation> should be used in preference.

<repository> contains the name of a repository within which manuscripts are stored, possibly forming part of an institution. [10.4.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: altIdentifier msIdentifier

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element repository
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.xtext}
```

Example

```
<msIdentifier>
  <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
  <institution>University of Oxford</institution>
  <repository>Bodleian Library</repository>
  <idno>MS. Bodley 406</idno>
</msIdentifier>
```

<residence> (residence) describes a person's present or past places of residence.
[15.2.2.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.dateable (@calendar, @period) (att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore,
 @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso,
 @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom,
 @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
 att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity,
 @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max,
 @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)
 (att.canonical (@key, @ref))

Member of model.persStateLike

Contained by

namesdates: person personGrp

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element residence
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<residence>Childhood in East Africa and long term resident of Glasgow,  
Scotland.</residence>
```

Example

```
<residence notAfter="1997">Mbeni estate, Dzukumura region, Matabele  
land</residence>  
<residence notBefore="1903" notAfter="1996">  
  <placeName>  
    <settlement>Glasgow</settlement>  
    <region>Scotland</region>  
  </placeName>  
</residence>
```

<retrace> contains a sequence of writing which has been retraced, for example by over-inking, to clarify or fix it.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status, @cause,
@seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit,
@quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min,
@max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)))

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc w

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell

header: change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote
msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark
namesdates: addName affiliation birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName
sex socecStatus surname
textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail
textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer
transcr: line metamark mod retrace surplus
verse: rhyme
May contain
analysis: c pc w
core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: formula notatedMusic table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait
textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo
verse: caesura rhyme
Declaration

```
element retrace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Note Multiple retraces are indicated by nesting one <retrace> within another. In principle, a retrace differs from a substitution in that second and subsequent rewrites do not materially alter the content of an element. Where minor changes have been made during the retracing action however these may be marked up using , <add>, etc. with an appropriate value for the change attribute.

<revisionDesc> (revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file. [2.5. 2.1.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.docStatus (*@status*)

Member of

Contained by

header: teiHeader

May contain

core: list

header: change listChange

Declaration

```
element revisionDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.docStatus.attributes,
  ( list | listChange | change+ )
}
```

Example

```
<revisionDesc status="embargoed">
  <change when="1991-11-11" who="#LB"> deleted chapter 10 </change>
</revisionDesc>
```

Note If present on this element, the status attribute should indicate the current status of the document. The same attribute may appear on any <change> to record the status at the time of that change. Conventionally change elements should be given in reverse date order, with the most recent change at the start of the list.

<rhyme> marks the rhyming part of a metrical line. [6.4.]

Module verse

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

@label provides a label to identify which part of a rhyme scheme this rhyming string instantiates.

Status Recommended

Datatype data.word

Values usually contains a single letter.

Note Within a particular scope, all <rhyme> elements with the same value for their label attribute are assumed to rhyme with each other. The scope is defined by the nearest ancestor element for which the rhyme attribute has been supplied.

Member of model.IPart

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item
l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell

header: change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName
sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element rhyme
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  attribute label { data.word }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```

<lg rhyme="abababcc">
  <l>'Tis pity learned virgins ever <rhyme label="a">wed</rhyme>
  </l>
  <l>With persons of no sort of edu<rhyme label="b">cation</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>Or gentlemen, who, though well born and
  <rhyme label="a">bred</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>Grow tired of scientific conver<rhyme label="b">sation</rhyme>:</l>
  <l>I don't choose to say much on this <rhyme label="a">head</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>I'm a plain man, and in a single <rhyme label="b">station</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>But – Oh! ye lords of ladies inte<rhyme label="c">llectual</rhyme>,</l>
  <l>Inform us truly, have they not hen-<rhyme label="a">peck'd you
  all</rhyme>?</l>
</lg>

```

<role> contains the name of a dramatic role, as given in a cast list. [7.1.4.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.castItemPart

Contained by

drama: castItem

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

element role { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

Example

```
<role xml:id="jt">Joan Trash</role>
<roleDesc>A Ginger-bread-woman</roleDesc>
```

Note It is important to assign a meaningful ID attribute to the `<role>` element, since this ID is referred to by who attributes on many other elements.

<roleDesc> (role description) describes a character's role in a drama. [7.1.4.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*))

Member of model.castItemPart

Contained by

drama: castGroup castItem

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

element roleDesc { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

Example

```
<roleDesc>gentlemen of leisure</roleDesc>
```

<roleName> contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank. [13.2.1.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,

@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef)) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.persNamePart

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element roleName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
```

```
att.typed.attributes,
macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<persName>
  <forename>William</forename>
  <surname>Poulteny</surname>
  <roleName>Earl of Bath</roleName>
</persName>
```

Note A <roleName> may be distinguished from an <addName> by virtue of the fact that, like a title, it typically exists independently of its holder.

<ROW> contains one row of a table. [14.1.1.]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.tableDecoration (@role, @rows, @cols)

Member of

Contained by

figures: table

May contain

figures: cell

Declaration

```
element row { att.global.attributes, att.tableDecoration.attributes, cell+ }
```

Example

```
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Classics</cell>
  <cell>Idle listless and unimproving</cell>
</row>
```

<RS> (referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string. [13.2.1. 3.5.1.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (type, @subtype)

@type (You must indicate the type of the referring string) characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Required

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **person** (natural person)
figure (literary figure)
geographic-entity (self explanatory)
organization (any type of organization)
other

Member of model.nameLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign
head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker
stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

element rs

```
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type
  {
    "person" | "figure" | "geographic-entity" | "organization" | "other"
  },
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q> said
<rs type="person">his lady</rs>
to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield Park</rs> is let at
last?</q>
```

<rubric> contains the text of any *rubric* or heading attached to a particular manuscript item, that is, a string of words through which a manuscript signals the beginning of a text division, often with an assertion as to its author and title, which is in some way set off from the text itself, usually in red ink, or by use of different size or type of script, or some other such visual device. [10.6.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.msQuoteLike

Contained by

msdescription: msItem msItemStruct

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element rubric { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<rubric>Nu koma Skyckiu Rym<expan>ur</expan>.</rubric>  
<rubric>Incipit liber de consciencia humana a beatissimo Bernardo  
editus.</rubric>  
<rubric>  
  <locus>16. f. 28v in margin: </locus>Dicta Cassiodori  
</rubric>
```

<salute> (salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc. [4.2.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.divWrapper

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue

figures: table

textstructure: body closer div group opener

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element salute { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<salute>To all courteous mindes, that will vouchsafe the readinge.</salute>
```

<scriptDesc> contains a description of the scripts used in a manuscript or similar source. [10.7.2.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

core: p

header: scriptNote

msdescription: summary

Declaration

```
element scriptDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, scriptNote+ ) )
}
```

Example

```
<scriptDesc>
  <p/>
</scriptDesc>
```

Example

```
<scriptDesc>
  <summary>Contains two distinct styles of scripts </summary>
  <scriptNote xml:id="style-1">.</scriptNote>
  <scriptNote xml:id="style-2">.</scriptNote>
</scriptDesc>
```

<scriptNote> describes a particular script distinguished within the description of a manuscript or similar resource. [10.7.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium, @scope)

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: scriptDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element scriptNote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.handFeatures.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<scriptNote scope="sole"/>
```

<seal> contains a description of one seal or similar attachment applied to a manuscript.
[10.7.3.2.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dateable (@calendar, @period)
(att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso
(@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.dateable.custom
(@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom,
@datingPoint, @datingMethod))

@contemporary specifies whether or not the seal is contemporary with the item to
which it is affixed

Status Optional

Datatype data.xTruthValue

Member of `seal`

msdescription: sealDesc

May contain

core: p

msdescription: decoNote

Declaration

```

element seal
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  attribute contemporary { data.xTruthValue }?,
  ( model.pLike | decoNote )+
}

```

Example

```

<seal n="2" type="pendant" subtype="cauda_duplex">
  <p>The seal of <name>Jens Olufsen</name> in black wax.
  (<ref>DAS 1061</ref>). Legend: <q>S IOHANNES OLAVI</q>.
  Parchment tag on which is written: <q>Woldorp Iohanne G</q>.</p>
</seal>

```

<sealDesc> (seal description) describes the seals or other external items attached to a manuscript, either as a series of paragraphs or as a series of distinct `<seal>` elements, possibly with additional `<decoNote>`s. [10.7.3.2.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

core: p

msdescription: condition decoNote seal summary

Declaration

```

element sealDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, ( decoNote | seal | condition )+ ) )
}

```

Example

```

<sealDesc>
  <seal type="pendant" contemporary="true">
    <p>Green wax vertical oval seal attached at base.</p>

```

```
</seal>
</sealDesc>
```

Example

```
<sealDesc>
  <p>Parchment strip for seal in place; seal missing.</p>
</sealDesc>
```

<secFol> (second folio) marks the word or words taken from a fixed point in a codex (typically the beginning of the second leaf) in order to provide a unique identifier for it. [10.3.7.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

`element secFol { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }`

Example

`<secFol>(con-)versio morum</secFol>`

<sense> groups together all information relating to one word sense in a dictionary entry, for example definitions, examples, and translation equivalents. [9.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.lexicographic (*@expand*, *@norm*, *@split*, *@value*, *@orig*,
@location, *@mergedIn*, *@opt*) (att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*))

@level gives the nesting depth of this sense.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.count`

Member of model.entryPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: entry re sense

namesdates: nym

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

dictionaries: def etym form gramGrp re sense usg xr

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element sense
{
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute level { data.count }?,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | sense      | model.entryPart.top
    | model.phrase     | model.global  )*
```

Example

```
<sense n="2">
  <usg type="time">Vx.</usg>
  <def>Vaillance, bravoure (spécial., au combat)</def>
  <cit type="example">
    <quote>La valeur n'attend pas le nombre des années</quote>
    <bibl>
      <author>Corneille</author>
    </bibl>
  </cit>
</sense>
```

Note May contain character data mixed with any other elements defined in the dictionary tag set.

<seriesStmt> (series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs. [2.2.5. 2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: editor p title

header: idno

Declaration

```
element seriesStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( title+, ( editor | respStmt )*, ( idno | biblScope )* ) )
}
```

Example

```

<seriesStmt>
  <title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian Literature</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>ed. by</resp>
    <name>Jan Gonda</name>
  </respStmt>
  <biblScope unit="vol">1.2</biblScope>
  <idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>

```

<set> (setting) contains a description of the setting, time, locale, appearance, etc., of the action of a play, typically found in the front matter of a printed performance text (not a stage direction). [7.1.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.frontPart.drama

Contained by

textstructure: back front

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct cb cit gap gb head index l label lb lg list milestone note p pb q
 quote sp stage

dictionaries: entry superEntry

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure notatedMusic table

header: biblFull

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation relationGrp

textcrit: listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```

element set
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.headLike | model.global )*, ( ( model.common ), model.global* )* )
}

```

Example

```

<set>
  <p>The action takes place on February 7th between the hours of noon and
  six in the
  afternoon, close to the Trenartha Tin Plate Works, on the borders of
  England and Wales,

```



```
    where a strike has been in progress throughout the winter.</p>
</set>
```

Example

```
<set>
  <head>SCENE</head>
  <p>A Sub-Post Office on a late autumn evening</p>
</set>
```

Example

```
<front>
<!-- <titlePage>, <div type="Dedication">, etc. -->
  <set>
    <list type="gloss">
      <label>TIME</label>
      <item>1907</item>
      <label>PLACE</label>
      <item>East Coast village in England</item>
    </list>
  </set>
</front>
```

Note Contains paragraphs or phrase level tags. This element should not be used outside the front matter; for similar contextual descriptions within the body of the text, use the <stage> element.

<settlement>

Module namesdates

Member of model.placeNamePart

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign
head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker
stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions altIdentifier catchwords collation colophon
condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit
layout material msIdentifier musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin
provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates
watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation org orgName
persName place residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Character data only

Declaration element settlement { text }

<sex> specifies the sex of a person.

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
 (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
 (*@change*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@source*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*,
@quantity, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*,
@max, *@confidence*))) (att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.dateable (*@calendar*,
@period) (att.dateable.w3c (*@when*, *@notBefore*, *@notAfter*, *@from*, *@to*))
 (att.dateable.iso (*@when-iso*, *@notBefore-iso*, *@notAfter-iso*, *@from-iso*, *@to-iso*))
 (att.dateable.custom (*@when-custom*, *@notBefore-custom*, *@notAfter-custom*,
@from-custom, *@to-custom*, *@datingPoint*, *@datingMethod*))

@value supplies a coded value for sex

Status Optional

Datatype data.sex

Note Values for this attribute are taken from ISO 5218:1977

Representation of Human Sexes; 0 indicates unknown; 1 indicates male; 2 indicates female; and 9 indicates not applicable.

Member of model.persStateLike

Contained by

namesdates: person personGrp

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
 location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
 surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
 undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

element sex
 {

```

att.global.attributes,
att.editLike.attributes,
att.dataable.attributes,
attribute value { data.sex }?,
macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<sex value="2">female</sex>
```

Note As with other culturally-constructed traits such as age, the way in which this concept is described in different cultural contexts may vary. The normalizing attributes are provided as a means of simplifying that variety to Western European norms and should not be used where that is inappropriate. The content of the element may be used to describe the intended concept in more detail, using plain text.

<sic> (Latin for thus or so) contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate. [3.4.1.]

Module core

Member of model.choicePart

Contained by

core: choice

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration `element sic { macro.paraContent }`

Example

```

for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <sic>a Table</sic> of green fields.

```

Example If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
- how <sic>we can</sic> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example It is also possible, using the <choice> and <corr> elements, to provide a corrected reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now
- how <choice>
  <sic>we can</sic>
  <corr>can we</corr>
</choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

Example

```
for his nose was as sharp as
a pen, and <choice>
  <sic>a Table</sic>
  <corr>a' babbld</corr>
</choice> of green fields.
```

<signatures> contains discussion of the leaf or quire signatures found within a codex.
[10.3.7.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item
l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence
roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

element signatures { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

Example

```
<signatures>Quire and leaf signatures in letters, [b]-v, and roman numerals; those in quires 10 (1) and 17 (s) in red ink and different from others; every third quire also signed with red crayon in arabic numerals in the center lower margin of the first leaf recto: "2" for quire 4 (f. 19), "3" for quire 7 (f. 43); "4," barely visible, for quire 10 (f. 65), "5," in a later hand, for quire 13 (f. 89), "6," in a later hand, for quire 16 (f. 113).</signatures>
```

<signed> (signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text. [4.2.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: epilogue performance prologue

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body closer div front group opener postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
 label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title
drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view
figures: formula notatedMusic table
gaiji: g
header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
 orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
 trait
textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
 undo
verse: caesura rhyme
Declaration

```
element signed { att.global.attributes, macro.paraContent }
```

Example

```
<signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name>
</signed>
```

Example

```
<closer>
  <signed>Sign'd and Seal'd,
  <list>
    <item>John Bull,</item>
    <item>Nic. Frog.</item>
  </list>
</signed>
</closer>
```

<socecStatus> (socio-economic status) contains an informal description of a person's perceived social or economic status. [15.2.2.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
 (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
 @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
 (@change)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore,
 @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso,
 @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom,
 @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
 att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity,
 @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max,

@confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef)
(att.canonical (@key, @ref))

@scheme identifies the classification system or taxonomy in use.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values Must identify a <taxonomy> element

@code identifies a status code defined within the classification system or taxonomy defined by the scheme attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values Must identify a <category> element

Member of model.persStateLike

Contained by

namesdates: person personGrp

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element socecStatus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
  attribute code { data.pointer }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<socecStatus scheme="#rg" code="#ab1"/>
```

Example

<socecStatus>Status AB1 in the RG Classification scheme**</socecStatus>**

Note The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification.

<sound> describes a sound effect or musical sequence specified within a screen play or radio script. [7.3.1. 7.3.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

@type categorizes the sound in some respect, e.g. as music, special effect, etc.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

@discrete indicates whether the sound overlaps the surrounding speeches or interrupts them.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.xTruthValue**

Default unknown

Note The value true indicates that the sound is heard between the surrounding speeches; the value false indicates that the sound overlaps one or more of the surrounding speeches.

Member of model.stageLike

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote

filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element sound
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute discrete { data.xTruthValue }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<sp>
  <speaker>Benjy</speaker>
  <p>Now to business.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Ford and Zaphod</speaker>
  <p>To business.</p>
</sp>
<sound discrete="true">Glasses clink.</sound>
<sp>
  <speaker>Benjy</speaker>
  <p>I beg your pardon?</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Ford</speaker>
  <p>I'm sorry, I thought you were proposing a toast.</p>
</sp>

```

Note A specialized form of stage direction.

<source> describes the original source for the information contained with a manuscript description. [10.9.1.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: recordHist

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element source { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

Example

```
<source>Derived from <ref>Stanley (1960)</ref>  
</source>
```

<sourceDesc> (source description) describes the source from which an electronic text was derived or generated, typically a bibliographic description in the case of a digitized text, or a phrase such as "born digital" for a text which has no previous existence. [2.2.7.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct list p

figures: table

header: biblFull

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation relationGrp

textcrit: listApp listWit

Declaration

```
element sourceDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  (
    model.pLike+
    | ( model.biblLike | model.sourceDescPart
      | model.listLike )+
  )
}
```

Example

```
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>
    <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the
Wood</title>. In
  <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
  <publisher>OUP</publisher>
  <date>1968</date>. </bibl>
</sourceDesc>
```

Example

```
<sourceDesc>
  <p>Born digital: no previous source exists.</p>
</sourceDesc>
```

<sourceDoc> contains a transcription or other representation of a single source document potentially forming part of a *dossier génétique* or collection of sources.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.resourceLike

Contained by

textstructure: TEI

May contain

core: cb gap gb graphic index lb media milestone note pb

figures: formula notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin surfaceGrp

Declaration

```
element sourceDoc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( ( model.global | model.graphicLike | surface | surfaceGrp )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<sourceDoc>
  <surfaceGrp n="leaf1">
    <surface facs="page1.png">
      <zone>All the writing on page 1</zone>
    </surface>
    <surface>
      <graphic url="page2-highRes.png"/>
      <graphic url="page2-lowRes.png"/>
      <zone>
        <line>A line of writing on page 2</line>
        <line>Another line of writing on page 2</line>
      </zone>
    </surface>
  </surfaceGrp>
</sourceDoc>
```

Note This element may be used as an alternative to <facsimile> for TEI documents containing only page images, or for documents containing both images and transcriptions. Transcriptions may be provided within the <surface> elements making up a source document, in parallel with them as part of a <text> element, or in both places if the encoder wishes to distinguish these two modes of transcription.

<sp> (speech) contains an individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text. [3.12.2. 3.12. 7.2.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.ascribed (@who)

Member of model.divPart

Contained by

core: item note q quote stage

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue set spGrp view

figures: figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textstructure: body div epigraph postscript

transcr: metamark

May contain

core: cb cit gap gb index l lb lg list milestone note p pb q quote speaker stage

drama: camera caption move sound tech view

figures: notatedMusic table

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

namesdates: listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace

textcrit: listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element sp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( speaker, model.global* )?,
    (
      (
        lg          | model.lLike
        | model.pLike      | model.listLike      | model.stageLike
        model.global*
      )+
    )
  )
}
```

Example

```
<sp>
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimian</speaker>
  <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him. In the
  first place....</p>
  <p>Fish, Miss Gryll – I could discourse to you on fish by the hour: but
  for the present I
  will forbear...</p>
</sp>
```

Note The who attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

Note Lines or paragraphs, stage directions, and phrase-level elements. The who attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the <speaker> element or as an alternative.

<spGrp> (speech group) contains a group of speeches or songs in a performance text presented in a source as constituting a single unit or “number”. [7.2.3.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.ascribed (@who)

Member of model.divPart

Contained by

core: item note q quote stage

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue set view

figures: figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

2 THE FORMAL SCHEMA

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textstructure: body div epigraph postscript

transcr: metamark

May contain

core: cb gap gb head index lb milestone note pb sp stage

drama: camera caption move sound tech view

figures: notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element spGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  ( model.headLike*, ( model.global | sp | model.stageLike )+ )
}
```

Example

```
<sp>
<speaker>FRAULEIN SCHNEIDER:</speaker>
<p> Herr Schultz! Can I believe what I see? <stage>(HERR SCHULTZ nods
proudly)</stage> But this is – too much to accept. So rare – so costly
–
so luxurious. </p>
</sp>
<stage>(She sings)</stage>
<spGrp n="4">
  <sp>
    <l>If you bought me diamonds, If you bought me pearls,</l>
    <l>If you bought me roses like some other gents</l>
    <l>Might bring to other girls,</l>
    <l>It couldn't please me more</l>
    <l>Than the gift I see -</l>
    <stage>(She takes a large pineapple out of the bag)</stage>
    <l>A pineapple for me!</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
    <speaker>SCHULTZ:</speaker>
    <stage>(Singing) </stage>
    <l>If, in your emotion, </l>
    <l>You began to sway, </l>
    <l>Went to get some air, </l>
    <l>Or grabbed a chair </l>
    <l>To keep from fainting dead away, </l>
    <l>It couldn't please me more </l>
    <l>Than to see you cling </l>
    <l>To the pineapple I bring.</l>
  </sp>
  <sp>
    <speaker>BOTH:</speaker>
    <l>Ah, ah, ah, ah, ah, ah, ah, ah</l>
  </sp>
```

```

<!-- ... -->
  <stage>(They dance)</stage>
</spGrp>
<sp>
  <speaker>FRAULEIN SCHNEIDER: </speaker>
  <p>But you must not bring me
    any more pineapples! Do you hear? It is not proper. It is a gift a
    young man would present to his lady love. It makes me blush!
  </p>
</sp>

```

<speaker> contains a specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment. [3.12.2.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

core: sp

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element speaker { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }

```

Example

```

<sp who="#ni #rsa">
  <speaker>Nancy and Robert</speaker>
  <stage type="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</stage>
  <p>The future? ...</p>

```

```
</sp>
<list type="speakers">
  <item xml:id="ni"/>
  <item xml:id="rsa"/>
</list>
```

<stage> (stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment. [3.12.2. 3.12. 7.2.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

@type indicates the kind of stage direction.

Status Recommended

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **setting** describes a setting.

entrance describes an entrance.

exit describes an exit.

business describes stage business.

novelistic is a narrative, motivating stage direction.

delivery describes how a character speaks.

modifier gives some detail about a character.

location describes a location.

mixed more than one of the above

Member of model.stageLike

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno
iso-fs: fLib fs
linking: anchor
msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width
namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait
textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail
transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo
verse: caesura rhyme
Declaration

```
element stage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type
  {
    "setting"
    | "entrance"
    | "exit"
    | "business"
    | "novelistic"
    | "delivery"
    | "modifier"
    | "location"
    | "mixed"
    | xsd:Name
  }?,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his horse.</stage>
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for the
family.</stage>
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>

```

<stamp> contains a word or phrase describing a stamp or similar device. [10.3.3.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype) att.dateable (@calendar, @period)
(att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.dateable.iso

(@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) (att.datable.custom
 (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom,
 @datingPoint, @datingMethod))

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item
 l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
 textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
 genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence
 roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
 note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
 objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
 location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
 surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
 undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

<pre> element stamp { att.global.attributes, att.typed.attributes, </pre>

```
att.dataable.attributes,  
macro.phraseSeq}
```

Example

```
<rubric>Apologyticu TTVLLIANI AC IGNORATIA IN XPO IHV<lb/>  
SI NON LICET<lb/>  
NOBIS RO<lb/>  
manii imperii <stamp>Bodleian stamp</stamp>  
<lb/>  
</rubric>
```

<styleDefDecl> (style definition language declaration) specifies the name of the formal language in which style or renditional information is supplied elsewhere in the document. [2.3.5.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.declarable (*@default*) att.styleDef (*@scheme*)

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain

core: p

Declaration

```
element styleDefDecl  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.declarable.attributes,  
  att.styleDef.attributes,  
  model.pLike*  
}
```

Example

```
<styleDefDecl scheme="css"/>  
<!-- ... -->  
<tagsDecl>  
  <rendition xml:id="boldface">font-weight: bold;</rendition>  
  <rendition xml:id="italicstyle">font-style: italic;</rendition>  
</tagsDecl>
```

<subc> (subcategorization) contains subcategorization information (transitive/intransitive, countable/non-countable, etc.) [9.3.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change

(*@change*) att.lexicographic (*@expand*, *@norm*, *@split*, *@value*, *@orig*, *@location*, *@mergedIn*, *@opt*) (att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*))

Member of model.entryPart model.gramPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: form gramGrp

namesdates: nym

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element subc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>médire</orth>
  </form>
  <gramGrp>
    <subc>t ind</subc>
  </gramGrp>
</entry>

```

<substJoin> (substitution join) identifies a series of possibly fragmented additions, deletions or other revisions on a manuscript that combine to make up a single intervention in the text

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.pointing (@targetLang, @target, @evaluate) att.transcriptional
(@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant)
(att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging
(@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp))
)

Member of model.global.meta

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan
foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref
reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue
role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material msItem musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName person
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element substJoin
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.transcriptional.attributes,
  ( model.descLike | model.certLike )*
}
```

Example

```
While <del xml:id="r112">pondering</del> thus <add xml:id="r113">she
mus'd</add>, her pinions fann'd
<substJoin target="#r112 #r113"/>
```

<summary> contains an overview of the available information concerning some aspect of an item (for example, its intellectual content, history, layout, typography etc.) as a complement or alternative to the more detailed information carried by more specific elements.

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: decoDesc handDesc history layoutDesc msContents scriptDesc sealDesc
typeDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element summary { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<summary>This item consists of three books with a prologue and an epilogue.  
</summary>
```

Example

```
<typeDesc>  
  <summary>Uses a mixture of Roman and Black Letter types.</summary>  
  <typeNote>Antiqua typeface, showing influence of Jenson's Venetian  
    fonts.</typeNote>  
  <typeNote>The black letter face is a variant of Schwabacher.</typeNote>  
</typeDesc>
```

<superEntry> groups a sequence of entries within any kind of lexical resource, such as a dictionary or lexicon which function as a single unit, for example a set of homographs. [9.1.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.entryLike (@type) att.sortable (@sortKey)

Member of model.entryLike model.entryPart

Contained by

core: cit

drama: castList epilogue performance prologue set

figures: figure

namesdates: nym

textstructure: body div epigraph postscript

May contain

dictionaries: entry

Declaration

```
element superEntry
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.entryLike.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  entry+
}
```

Example

```
<superEntry>
  <form>
    <orth>abandon</orth>
    <hyph>a|ban|don</hyph>
    <pron>@"band@n</pron>
  </form>
  <entry n="1">
    <gramGrp>
      <pos>v</pos>
      <subc>T1</subc>
    </gramGrp>
    <sense n="1">
      <def>to leave completely and for ever ... </def>
    </sense>
  </entry>
  <entry n="2">
    <gramGrp>
      <pos>n</pos>
      <subc>U</subc>
    </gramGrp>
    <def>the state when one's feelings and actions are uncontrolled; freedom
from
  control</def>
  </entry>
</superEntry>
```

<support> contains a description of the materials etc. which make up the physical support for the written part of a manuscript. [10.7.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: supportDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element support { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

Example

```
<objectDesc form="roll">
  <supportDesc>
    <support> Parchment roll with <material>silk</material> ribbons.
  </support>
</supportDesc>
</objectDesc>
```

<supportDesc> (support description) groups elements describing the physical support for the written part of a manuscript. [10.7.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@material a short project-defined name for the material composing the majority of the support

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **paper** (paper)

parch (parchment)

mixed

Member of ~~Group~~ **contained by**

msdescription: objectDesc

May contain

core: p

header: extent

msdescription: collation condition foliation support

Declaration

```
element supportDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute material { "paper" | "parch" | "mixed" | xsd:Name }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( support?, extent?, foliation*, collation?, condition? ) )
}
```

Example

```
<supportDesc>
  <support> Parchment roll with <material>silks</material> ribbons.
</support>
</supportDesc>
```

<surfaceGrp> defines any kind of useful grouping of written surfaces, for example the recto and verso of a single leaf, which the encoder wishes to treat as a single unit.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.coordinated (@start, @ulx, @uly, @lrx, @lry) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of

Contained by

transcr: sourceDoc surfaceGrp

May contain

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

figures: notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin surfaceGrp

Declaration

```

element surfaceGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.coordinated.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( model.global | surface | surfaceGrp )+
}

```

Example

```

<sourceDoc>
<surfaceGrp>
  <surface
    ulx="0"
    uly="0"
    lrx="200"
    lry="300">
    <graphic url="Bovelles-49r.png"/>
  </surface>
  <surface
    ulx="0"
    uly="0"
    lrx="200"
    lry="300">
    <graphic url="Bovelles-49v.png"/>
  </surface>
</surfaceGrp>
</sourceDoc>

```

Note Where it is useful or meaningful to do so, any grouping of multiple <surface> elements may be indicated using the <surfaceGrp> elements.

<surname> contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name. [13.2.1.]

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.personal (@full, @sort) (att.naming (@role, @nymRef)) (att.canonical (@key, @ref))) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.persNamePart

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element surname
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<surname type="combine">St John Stevas</surname>
```

<surplus> marks text present in the source which the editor believes to be superfluous or redundant. [11.3.3.1.]

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,

@select) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@source*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*)) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) (att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

@reason indicates the grounds for believing this text to be superfluous.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.word separated by whitespace

Values any word describing the difficulty, e.g. *repeated*, *interpolated* etc.

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc w

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell

header: change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation birth country death education faith floruit forename genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element surplus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  attribute reason { list { data.word+ } }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
I am dr Sr yrs
<surplus reason="repeated">yrs</surplus>
Sydney Smith

```

<surrogates> contains information about any representations of the manuscript being described which may exist in the holding institution or elsewhere. [10.9.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: additional

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element surrogates { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }
```

Example

```
<surrogates>
  <bibl>
    <title type="gmd">diapositive</title>
    <idno>AM 74 a, fol.</idno>
    <date>May 1984</date>
  </bibl>
  <bibl>
    <title type="gmd">b/w prints</title>
    <idno>AM 75 a, fol.</idno>
    <date>1972</date>
  </bibl>
</surrogates>
```

<symbol/> (symbolic value) represents the value part of a feature-value specification which contains one of a finite list of symbols. [18.3.]

Module iso-fs

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)

@value supplies the symbolic value for the feature, one of a finite list that may be specified in a feature declaration.

Status Required

Datatype **data.word**

Values A string, e.g. *feminine*.

Member of model.featureVal.single

Contained by

iso-fs: f

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element symbol
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datcat.attributes,
  attribute value { data.word },
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<f name="gender">
  <symbol value="feminine"/>
</f>
```

<table> contains text displayed in tabular form, in rows and columns. [14.1.1.]

Module figures

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@rows indicates the number of rows in the table.

Status Optional

Datatype data.count

Values If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of rows.

Note Rows should be presented from top to bottom.

@cols (columns) indicates the number of columns in each row of the table.

Status Optional

Datatype data.count

Values If no number is supplied, an application must calculate the number of columns.

Note Within each row, columns should be presented left to right.

Member of model.listLike

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote sourceDesc typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: cb gap gb graphic head index lb media milestone note pb

figures: formula notatedMusic row

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph postscript salute signed trailer

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```
element table
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute rows { data.count }?,
  attribute cols { data.count }?,
  (
    ( model.headLike | model.global )*,
    ( ( row, model.global* )+ | ( ( model.graphicLike ), model.global* )+ ),
```

```

    ( ( model.divBottom ), model.global* ) *
  )
}

```

Example

```

<table rows="4" cols="4">
<head>Poor Men's Lodgings in Norfolk (Mayhew, 1843)</head>
<row role="label">
  <cell role="data"/>
  <cell role="data">Dossing Cribs or Lodging Houses</cell>
  <cell role="data">Beds</cell>
  <cell role="data">Needys or Nightly Lodgers</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Bury St Edmund's</cell>
  <cell role="data">5</cell>
  <cell role="data">8</cell>
  <cell role="data">128</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Thetford</cell>
  <cell role="data">3</cell>
  <cell role="data">6</cell>
  <cell role="data">36</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Attleboro'</cell>
  <cell role="data">3</cell>
  <cell role="data">5</cell>
  <cell role="data">20</cell>
</row>
<row role="data">
  <cell role="label">Wymondham</cell>
  <cell role="data">1</cell>
  <cell role="data">11</cell>
  <cell role="data">22</cell>
</row>
</table>

```

Note Contains an optional heading and a series of rows. Any rendition information should be supplied using the global `rend` attribute, at the table, row, or cell level as appropriate.

<tech> (technical stage direction) describes a special-purpose stage direction that is not meant for the actors. [7.3.1.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes `att.global` (`@xml:id`, `@n`, `@xml:lang`, `@style`, `@xml:space`) (`att.global.linking` (`@corresp`, `@synch`, `@sameAs`, `@copyOf`, `@next`, `@prev`, `@exclude`, `@select`)) (`att.global.analytic` (`@ana`)) (`att.global.facs` (`@facs`)) (`att.global.change` (`@change`))

@type categorizes the technical stage direction.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **light** a lighting cue

sound a sound cue

prop a prop cue
block a blocking instruction

@perf (performance) identifies the performance or performances to which this technical direction applies.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Values The IDREFS are derived from the xml:id attribute on a <performance> element.

Member of model.stageLike

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index
label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element tech
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "light" | "sound" | "prop" | "block" }?,
```

```
attribute perf { data.enumerated }?,
macro.paraContent}
```

Example

```
<tech type="light">Red spot on his face</tech>
```

<teiHeader> (TEI Header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an electronic title page prefixed to every TEI-conformant text. [2.1.1.15.1.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

@type specifies the kind of document to which the header is attached, for example whether it is a corpus or individual text.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.enumerated**

Sample values include: **text** the header is attached to a single text.

[Default]

corpus the header is attached to a corpus.

Member of **Confined by**

textstructure: TEI

May contain

header: encodingDesc fileDesc profileDesc revisionDesc

Declaration

```
element teiHeader
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( fileDesc, model.teiHeaderPart*, revisionDesc? )
}
```

Example

```
<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
      <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
      <author>Shakespeare, William (1564–1616)</author>
    </titleStmt>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
      <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
    </respStmt>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
      <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
    </respStmt>
  </fileDesc>
</teiHeader>
```

```

<publicationStmt>
  <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
  <address>
    <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
  </address>
  <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
  <availability>
    <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
  </availability>
  <date when="1968">1968</date>
</publicationStmt>
<sourceDesc>
  <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman (The
Norton Facsimile,
    1968)</bibl>
  </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
<encodingDesc>
  <projectDesc>
    <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of
old-spelling
      concordances in 1968, this text was extensively checked and revised
for use during the
      editing of the new Oxford Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>
  </projectDesc>
  <editorialDecl>
    <correction>
      <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
    </correction>
    <normalization>
      <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except that long s and
ligatured
        forms are not encoded.</p>
    </normalization>
  </editorialDecl>
  <refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
    <cRefPattern
      matchPattern="(\\S+) ([^.]+)\\.\\.\\.*"
      replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']//
lb[@n='$3'])">
      <p>A reference is created by assembling the following, in the reverse
order as that
        listed here: <list>
          <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
          </item>
          <item>a period</item>
          <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
          </item>
          <item>a space</item>
          <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
          </item>
        </list>
      </p>
    </cRefPattern>
  </refsDecl>
</encodingDesc>
<revisionDesc>
  <list>
    <item>
      <date when="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
    </item>
  </list>

```

```

    <date when="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
  </list>
</revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>

```

Note One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

<term> contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term. [3.3.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*) att.pointing (*target*, *@targetLang*, *@evaluate*) **@target** specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI

References

Derived from att.pointing

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

Values One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. **TEI%20Consortium**.

Member of model.emphLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi index item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element term
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attribute.targetLang,
  att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a **<term>parser</term>**, and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.

Example

We may define **<term xml:id="TDPV" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term>** as **<gloss target="#TDPV">**the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.**</gloss>**

Note This element is used to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for the location of a parent <index> element. In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The <term> element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the <term> element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion.

As with other members of the att.canonical class, instances of this element occurring in a text may be associated with a canonical definition, either by means of a URI (using the ref attribute), or by means of some system-specific code value (using the

key attribute). Because the mutually exclusive target and cRef attributes overlap with the function of the ref attribute, they are deprecated and may be removed at a subsequent release.

<terrain> contains information about the physical terrain of a place.

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)) att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.naming (@role, @nymRef) (att.canonical (@key, @ref)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.placeStateLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName place residence roleName sex socecStatus surname terrain

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct head label note p

header: biblFull

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listRelation relationGrp terrain

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

<pre> element terrain { </pre>

```

att.global.attributes,
att.dataable.attributes,
att.editLike.attributes,
att.naming.attributes,
att.typed.attributes,
(
  model.headLike*,
  ( ( model.pLike+ ) | ( model.labelLike+ ) ),
  ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike )*,
  terrain*
)
}

```

Example

```

<place xml:id="KERG">
  <placeName>Kerguelen Islands</placeName>
  <!-- ... -->
  <terrain>
    <desc>antarctic tundra</desc>
  </terrain>
  <!-- ... -->
</place>

```

<text> contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample. [4.15.1.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

*Member of**Contained by*

textstructure: TEI group

May contain

core: cb gap gb index lb milestone note pb

figures: notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

textstructure: back body front group

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```

element text
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( front, model.global* )?,
    ( body | group ),
    model.global*,

```

```
    ( back, model.global* )?  
  )  
}
```

Example

```
<text>  
  <front>  
    <docTitle>  
      <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>  
    </docTitle>  
  </front>  
  <body>  
    <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>  
    <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>  
  </body>  
</text>
```

Example The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```
<text>  
  <front>  
    <!-- front matter for the whole group -->  
  </front>  
  <group>  
    <text>  
    <!-- first text -->  
    </text>  
    <text>  
    <!-- second text -->  
    </text>  
  </group>  
</text>
```

Note This element should not be used to represent a text which is inserted at an arbitrary point within the structure of another, for example as in an embedded or quoted narrative; the <floatingText> is provided for this purpose.

<textLang> (text language) describes the languages and writing systems identified within the bibliographic work being described, rather than its description. [3.11.2.3. 10.6.6.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@mainLang (main language) supplies a code which identifies the chief language used in the bibliographic work.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.language`

Values a recognized language “tag” generated according to BCP 47 which may additionally be documented by a <language> element in the header

@otherLangs (other languages) one or more codes identifying any other languages used in the bibliographic work.

Status Optional

Datatype 0–∞ occurrences of `data.language` separated by whitespace

Values a list of codes, each of which is a recognized language “tag” generated according to BCP 47 which may additionally be documented by a <language> element in the header

Member of model.biblPart model.msItemPart

Contained by

core: bibl monogr

msdescription: msContents msItem msItemStruct

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element textLang
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute mainLang { data.language }?,
  attribute otherLangs { list { data.language* } }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<textLang mainLang="en" otherLangs="la"> Predominantly in English with Latin glosses</textLang>
```

Note Note that this element should not be used to document the languages or writing systems used for the bibliographic or manuscript description itself: as for all other TEI elements, such information should be provided by means of the global `xml:lang` attribute attached to the element containing the description. The same values should be used to identify languages and writing systems in all cases, and the codes used may be documented further in the <language> element.

<time> contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format. [3.5.4.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore,
@notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso,
@from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom,
@notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity,
@extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max,
@confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.dateLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
imprint item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker
stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence
roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat

location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element time
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}

```

Example

As he sat smiling, the
quarter struck – <time when="11:45:00">the quarter to twelve</time>.

<title> contains a title for any kind of work. [3.11.2.2. 2.2.1. 2.2.5.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.canonical (@key, @ref) att.typed (type, @subtype)

@type classifies the title according to some convenient typology.

Derived from att.typed

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: **main** main title

sub (subordinate) subtitle, title of part

alt (alternate) alternate title, often in another language, by which
the work is also known

short abbreviated form of title

desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work functioning
as a title

Note This attribute is provided for convenience in analysing titles and
processing them according to their type; where such specialized
processing is not necessary, there is no need for such analysis, and
the entire title, including subtitles and any parallel titles, may be
enclosed within a single <title> element.

@level indicates the bibliographic level for a title, that is, whether it identifies an
article, book, journal, series, or unpublished material.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **a** (analytic) analytic title (article, poem, or other item published as part of a larger item)

m (monographic) monographic title (book, collection, or other item published as a distinct item, including single volumes of multi-volume works)

j (journal) journal title

s (series) series title

u (unpublished) title of unpublished material (including theses and dissertations unless published by a commercial press)

Note The level of a title is sometimes implied by its context: for example, a title appearing directly within an <analytic> element is *ipso facto* of level “a”, and one appearing within a <series> element of level “s”. For this reason, the level attribute is not required in contexts where its value can be unambiguously inferred. Where it is supplied in such contexts, its value should not contradict the value implied by its parent element.

Member of model.emphLike model.msQuoteLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label monogr note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote seriesStmnt titleStmnt typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem msItemStruct musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element title
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.canonical.attributes,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings of
a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK,
18–21 July 1989</title>
```

Example

```
<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable
edition</title>
```

Example

```
<title type="full">
  <title type="main">Synthèse</title>
  <title type="sub">an international journal for
    epistemology, methodology and history of
    science</title>
</title>
```

Note The attributes key and ref, inherited from the class att.canonical may be used to indicate the canonical form for the title; the former, by supplying (for example) the identifier of a record in some external library system; the latter by pointing to an XML element somewhere containing the canonical form of the title.

<titlePage> (title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)

(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,

@select) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*))

@type classifies the title page according to any convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Note This attribute allows the same element to be used for volume title pages, series title pages, etc., as well as for the “main” title page of a work.

Member of model.frontPart

Contained by

msdescription: msContents

textstructure: back front

May contain

core: cb gap gb graphic index lb milestone note pb

figures: figure notatedMusic

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: witDetail

textstructure: byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph imprimatur titlePart

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark substJoin

Declaration

```

element titlePage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( model.titlepagePart ),
    ( model.titlepagePart | model.global ) *
  )
}

```

Example

```

<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart>
    <titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen of the West.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition>
  <byline>By T.D.</byline>
  <figure>
    <head>TP</head>
    <p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p>
    <figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc>
  </figure>
  <docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name> for
  <name>T.P.</name>
  <date>1612.</date>
  </docImprint>
</titlePage>

```

<titlePart> contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page. [4.6.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@type specifies the role of this subdivision of the title.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Suggested values include: **main** main title of the work [Default]

sub (subordinate) subtitle of the work

alt (alternate) alternative title of the work

short abbreviated form of title

desc (descriptive) descriptive paraphrase of the work

Member of model.pLike.front model.titlepagePart

Contained by

msdescription: msItem

textstructure: back docTitle front titlePage

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element titlePart
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute type { "main" | "sub" | "alt" | "short" | "desc" | xsd:Name }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES
    AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS
    Moll Flanders, &c.
  </titlePart>
  <titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
    And during a Life of continu'd Variety for
    Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was
    Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
    once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief,</hi>
    Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
    at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a
    <hi>Penitent</hi>.</titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

<titleStmt> (title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its content. [2.2.1. 2.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of

Contained by

header: biblFull fileDesc

May contain

core: author editor title

Declaration

```
element titleStmt { att.global.attributes, ( title+, model.respLike* ) }
```

Example

```
<titleStmt>
  <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert: a machine-readable
  transcription</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>compiled by</resp>
    <name>P.J. Lucas</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

<trailer> contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.
[4.2.4. 4.2.]

Module textstructure

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.typed (@type, @subtype)

Member of model.divBottomPart

Contained by

core: lg list

drama: castGroup epilogue performance prologue

figures: figure table

textstructure: back body div front group postscript

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element trailer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<trailer>Explicit pars tertia</trailer>
```

<trait> contains a description of some status or quality attributed to a person, place, or organization typically, but not necessarily, independent of the volition or action of the holder and usually not at some specific time or for a specific date range.

Module namesdates

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.datable (@calendar, @period) (att.datable.w3c (@when, @notBefore,
@notAfter, @from, @to)) (att.datable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso,
@from-iso, @to-iso)) (att.datable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom,
@notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod))
att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity,
@extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max,

@confidence)) (att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)) att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*)
 (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)) att.typed (*@type*, *@subtype*)

Member of model.persStateLike model.placeStateLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign
 head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker
 stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
 genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName
 person personGrp place residence roleName sex socecStatus surname trait

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

core: bibl biblStruct head label note p

header: biblFull

msdescription: msDesc

namesdates: listRelation relationGrp trait

textcrit: witDetail

Declaration

```

element trait
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  (
    trait+
    | ( model.headLike*, model.pLike+, ( model.noteLike
    | model.biblLike )* )
    | ( ( model.labelLike | model.noteLike | model.biblLike )* )
  )
}

```

Example

```

<trait type="physical">
  <label>Eye colour</label>

```

```
<desc>Blue</desc>
</trait>
```

Note Where there is confusion between <trait> and <state> the more general purpose element <state> should be used even for unchanging characteristics. If you wish to distinguish between characteristics that are generally perceived to be time-bound states and those assumed to be fixed traits, then <trait> is available for the more static of these. The <state> element encodes characteristics which are sometimes assumed to change, often at specific times or over a date range, whereas the <trait> elements are used to record characteristics, such as eye-colour, which are less subject to change. Traits are typically, but not necessarily, independent of the volition or action of the holder.

<transpose> describes a single textual transposition as an ordered list of at least two pointers specifying the order in which the elements indicated should be re-combined.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of

Contained by

transcr: listTranspose

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element transpose { att.global.attributes, ( ptr, ptr+ ) }
```

Example

```
<transpose>
  <ptr target="#ib02"/>
  <ptr target="#ib01"/>
</transpose>
```

The transposition recorded here indicates that the content of the element with identifier **ib02** should appear before the content of the element with identifier **ib01**.

Note Transposition is usually indicated in a document by a metamark such as a wavy line or numbering. The order in which <ptr> elements appear within a <transpose> element should correspond with the desired order, as indicated by the metamark.

<typeDesc> contains a description of the typefaces or other aspects of the printing of an incunable or other printed source. [10.7.2.1.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

Member of model.physDescPart

Contained by

msdescription: physDesc

May contain

core: p

header: typeNote

msdescription: summary

Declaration

```
element typeDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( summary?, typeNote+ ) )
}
```

Example

```
<typeDesc>
  <p>Uses an unidentified black letter font, probably from the
    15th century</p>
</typeDesc>
```

Example

```
<typeDesc>
  <summary>Contains a mixture of blackletter and Roman (antiqua)
  typefaces</summary>
  <typeNote xml:id="Frak1">Blackletter face, showing
    similarities to those produced in Wuerzburg after 1470.</typeNote>
  <typeNote xml:id="Rom1">Roman face of Venetian origins.</typeNote>
</typeDesc>
```

<typeNote> describes a particular font or other significant typographic feature distinguished within the description of a printed resource. [10.7.2.]

Module header

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.handFeatures (@scribe, @scribeRef, @script, @scriptRef, @medium,
@scope)

Member of

Contained by

msdescription: typeDesc

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element typeNote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.handFeatures.attributes,
  macro.specialPara}

```

Example

```
<typeNote scope="sole"> Printed in an Antiqua typeface showing strong
Italianate influence.
</typeNote>
```

<unclear> contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source. [11.3.3.1. 3.4.3.]

Module core

Attributes Attributes

@reason indicates why the material is hard to transcribe.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values one or more words describing the difficulty, e.g. *faded*,
background-noise, *passing-truck*, *illegible*, *eccentric-ductus*.

```
<div>
  <head>Rx</head>
  <p>500 mg <unclear
    reason="illegible">placebo</unclear>
  </p>
</div>
```

@hand Where the difficulty in transcription arises from action (partial deletion, etc.) assignable to an identifiable hand, signifies the hand responsible for the action.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values must point to a hand identifier typically but not necessarily declared in the document header (see section 11.3.2.1.).

@agent Where the difficulty in transcription arises from damage, categorizes the cause of the damage, if it can be identified.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **rubbing** damage results from rubbing of the leaf edges

mildew damage results from mildew on the leaf surface

smoke damage results from smoke

Member of model.choicePart

Contained by

core: choice

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element unclear
{
  attribute reason { list { data.word+ } }?,
  attribute hand { data.pointer }?,
  attribute agent { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```

and from time to time invited in like manner
his att<unclear>ention</unclear>

```

Here the last few letters of the word are hard to read.

Example

```

<u> ...and then <unclear reason="background-noise">Nathalie</unclear> said
... </u>

```

Note The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter 21..The

<damage>, <gap>, , <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section 11.3.3.2. for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

<undo/> indicates one or more marked-up interventions in a document which have subsequently been marked for cancellation.

Module transcr

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.spanning (@spanTo) att.transcriptional (@hand, @status, @cause, @seq) (att.editLike (@evidence, @source, @instant) (att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence))) (att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)))

@target points to one or more elements representing the interventions which are to be reverted or undone.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Member of model.pPart.transcriptional

Contained by

analysis: pc w

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell

header: change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation birth country death education faith floruit forename genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element undo
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
```

```

    att.transcriptional.attributes,
    attribute target { list { data.pointer+ } }?,
    empty
}

```

Example

```

<line>This is <del change="#s2" rend="overstrike">
  <seg xml:id="undo-a">just some</seg>
  sample <seg xml:id="undo-b">text</seg>,
  we need</del>
  <add change="#s2">not</add>
a real example.</line>
<undo target="#undo-a #undo-b" rend="dotted" change="#s3"/>

```

This encoding represents the following sequence of events:

- "This is just some sample text, we need a real example" is written
- At stage s2, "just some sample text, we need" is deleted by overstriking, and "not" is added
- At stage s3, parts of the deletion are cancelled by underdotting, thus reinstating the words "just some" and "text".

<unicodeName> (unicode property name) contains the name of a registered Unicode normative or informative property.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change))

@version specifies the version number of the Unicode Standard in which this property name is defined.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.version`

Values a valid Unicode version number.

Member of **contained by**

gaiji: charProp

May contain Character data only

Declaration

```

element unicodeName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute version { data.version }?,
  text
}

```

Example

```

<unicodeName>character-decomposition-mapping</unicodeName>
<unicodeName>general-category</unicodeName>

```


Note A definitive list of current Unicode property names is provided in The Unicode Standard.

<usg> (usage) contains usage information in a dictionary entry. [9.3.5.2.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.lexicographic (@expand, @norm, @split, @value, @orig, @location, @mergedIn, @opt) (att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat))

@type classifies the usage information using any convenient typology.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: **geo** (geographic) geographic area

time temporal, historical era (archaic, old, etc.)

dom (domain) domain or subject matter (e.g. scientific, literary etc.)

register (register)

style style (figurative, literal, etc.)

plev (preference level) preference level (chiefly, usually, etc.)

lang (language) name of a language mentioned in etymological or other linguistic discussion.

gram (grammatical) grammatical usage

syn (synonym) synonym given to show use

hyper (hypernym) hypernym given to show usage

colloc (collocation) typical collocate of the headword.

comp (complement) typical complement

obj (object) typical object

subj (subject) typical subject

verb typical verb

hint unclassifiable piece of information to guide sense choice

Member of model.entryPart model.entryPart.top model.gramPart

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: entry etym form gramGrp re sense xr

namesdates: nym

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index label lb lg list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element usg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

Example

```
<form>
  <orth>colour</orth>
  <form>
    <usg type="geo">U.S.</usg>
    <orth>color</orth>
  </form>
</form>

```

<value> (value) contains a single value for some property, attribute, or other analysis.

Module gaiji

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of

Contained by

gaiji: charProp

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element value { att.global.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

Example

```
<value>unknown</value>
```

<variantEncoding/> declares the method used to encode text-critical variants.
[12.1.1.]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

@method indicates which method is used to encode the apparatus of variants.

Status Required

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **location-referenced** apparatus uses line numbers or other canonical reference scheme referenced in a base text.

double-end-point apparatus indicates the precise locations of the beginning and ending of each lemma relative to a base text.

parallel-segmentation alternate readings of a passage are given in parallel in the text; no notion of a base text is necessary.

Note The value “parallel-segmentation” requires in-line encoding of the apparatus.

@location indicates whether the apparatus appears within the running text or external to it.

Status Required

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **internal** apparatus appears within the running text.

external apparatus appears outside the base text.

Note The value “external” is inconsistent with the parallel-segmentation method of apparatus markup.

Member of model.encodingDescPart

Contained by

header: encodingDesc

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element variantEncoding
{
  att.global.attributes,
  attribute method
  {
    "location-referenced" | "double-end-point" | "parallel-segmentation"
  },
  attribute location { "internal" | "external" },
  empty
}
```

Example

```
<variantEncoding method="location-referenced" location="external"/>
```

<view> describes the visual context of some part of a screen play in terms of what the spectator sees, generally independent of any dialogue. [7.3.1. 7.3.]

Module drama

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
 (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
 (*@change*))

Member of model.stageLike

Contained by

core: corr emph head hi item l lg note orig p q quote ref reg sic sp stage title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos subc usg xr

drama: camera caption castList epilogue performance prologue set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figDesc figure

header: change handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions collation condition custEvent decoNote
 filiation foliation layout musicNotation origin provenance source support surrogates

textcrit: lem rdg witness

textstructure: body div docEdition epigraph imprimatur postscript signed titlePart

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index l
 label lb lg list media milestone note p pb q quote ref rs sp stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound spGrp tech view

figures: figure formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
 msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
 listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset
 orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain
 trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
 undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

<pre>element view { att.global.attributes, macro.specialPara }</pre>
--

Example

```
<view>
  <name>Max</name> joins his daughter
  at the window. <hi>Rain</hi> sprays his
  face--
```

```

</view>
<view>
  <camera>Max's POV</camera> He sees occasional
  windows open, and just across from his apartment
  house, a <hi>man</hi> opens the front door of
  a brownstone--
</view>

```

Example

```

<div type="shot">
  <view>BBC World symbol</view>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Voice Over</speaker>
    <p>Monty Python's Flying Circus tonight comes to you live
      from the Grillomat Snack Bar, Paignton.</p>
  </sp>
</div>
<div type="shot">
  <view>Interior of a nasty snack bar. Customers around, preferably
    real people. Linkman sitting at one of the plastic tables.</view>
  <sp>
    <speaker>Linkman</speaker>
    <p>Hello to you live from the Grillomat Snack Bar.
  </p>
  </sp>
</div>

```

Note A view is a particular form of stage direction.

<w> (word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word. [17.1.]

Module analysis

Attributes `Attributesatt.global` (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
`att.global.linking` (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select) `att.global.facs` (@facs) `att.global.change` (@change) `att.datcat` (@datcat,
@valueDatcat) `att.typed` (~~type~~, @subtype)

@lemma provides a lemma for the word, such as an uninflected dictionary entry form.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.text`

@lemmaRef provides a pointer to a definition of the lemma for the word, for example in an online lexicon.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Member of `model.segLike`

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell

header: change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
 custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
 material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
 secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation birth country death education faith floruit forename
 genName nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence roleName
 sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
 imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c w

core: cb choice gap gb hi index lb milestone note pb

figures: notatedMusic

gaiji: g

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
 undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element w
{
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.style,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.facs.attribute.facs,
  att.global.change.attribute.change,
  att.datcat.attribute.datcat,
  att.datcat.attribute.valueDatcat,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute lemma { data.text }?,
  attribute lemmaRef { data.pointer }?,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | w      | c      | model.global
    | model.lPart     | model.hiLike  | model.pPart.edit  )*
}

```

Example

```
<w
  type="verb"
  lemma="hit"
  lemmaRef="http://www.example.com/lexicon/
hitvb.xml">hitt<m type="suffix">ing</m>
</w>
```

<watermark> contains a word or phrase describing a watermark or similar device.

[10.3.3.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change))

Member of model.pPart.msdesc

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi item
l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout
material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric
secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName residence
roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element watermark { att.global.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<support>  
  <p>  
    <material>Rag paper</material> with <watermark>anchor</watermark>  
  watermark</p>  
</support>
```

<width> contains a measurement measured along the axis parallel to the bottom of the written surface, i.e. perpendicular to the spine of a book or codex. [10.3.4.]

Module msdescription

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*)
(att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change
(*@change*)) att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*)
(att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))

Member of model.dimLike model.measureLike

Contained by

core: abbr addrLine author bibl citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi
item l label note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic speaker stage term
textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castItem role roleDesc sound tech view

figures: cell figDesc

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions catchwords collation colophon condition
custEvent decoNote dimensions explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit
layout material musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance
rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth country death education faith floruit forename
genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation orgName persName
residence roleName sex socecStatus surname

textcrit: lem rdg wit witDetail witness

textstructure: byline closer dateline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint
imprimatur opener salute signed titlePart trailer

transcr: metamark mod retrace surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

gaiji: g

Declaration

```
element width { att.global.attributes, att.dimensions.attributes, macro.xtext }
```

Example

```
<width unit="in">4</width>
```

Note If used to specify the depth of a non text-bearing portion of some object, for example a monument, this element conventionally refers to the axis facing the observer, and perpendicular to that indicated by the “depth” axis.

<wit> contains a list of one or more sigla of witnesses attesting a given reading, in a textual variation. [12.1.4.]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.rdgPart (@wit)

Member of model.rdgPart

Contained by

textcrit: app lem rdg rdgGrp

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element wit { att.global.attributes, att.rdgPart.attributes, macro.phraseSeq }
```

Example

```
<rdg wit="#El #Hg">Experience</rdg>
<wit>Ellesmere, Hengwryt</wit>
```

Note This element represents the same information as that provided by the wit attribute of the reading; it may be used to record the exact form of the sigla given in the source edition, when that is of interest.

<witDetail> (witness detail) gives further information about a particular witness, or witnesses, to a particular reading. [12.1.]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (*@xml:id*, *@n*, *@xml:lang*, *@style*, *@xml:space*) (att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*, *@prev*, *@exclude*, *@select*)) (att.global.analytic (*@ana*)) (att.global.facs (*@facs*)) (att.global.change (*@change*)) att.placement (*@place*) att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*) att.pointing (*@targetLang*, *@target*, *@evaluate*)

@wit (witnesses) indicates the sigil or sigla for the witnesses to which the detail refers.

Status Required

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values the identifier or identifiers of the sigil or sigla.

@type describes the type of information given about the witness.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Member of model.noteLike

Contained by

analysis: w

core: abbr addrLine address author bibl biblStruct cit citedRange corr date editor emph expan foreign head hi imprint item l label lg list monogr note orig p pubPlace publisher q quote ref reg rs sic sp speaker stage term textLang time title unclear

dictionaries: def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

drama: actor camera caption castGroup castItem castList epilogue performance prologue role roleDesc set sound spGrp tech view

figures: cell figure table

gaiji: char glyph

header: authority change edition extent handNote licence notesStmt scriptNote typeNote

msdescription: accMat acquisition additions adminInfo catchwords collation colophon condition custEvent decoNote explicit filiation finalRubric foliation heraldry incipit layout material msItem msItemStruct musicNotation objectType origDate origPlace origin provenance rubric secFol signatures source stamp summary support surrogates watermark

namesdates: addName affiliation age birth climate country death education event faith floruit forename genName langKnown location nameLink nationality occupation org orgName persName person place population residence roleName sex socecStatus surname terrain trait

textcrit: app lem rdg wit witDetail

textstructure: back body byline closer dateline div docAuthor docDate docEdition
docImprint docTitle epigraph front group imprimatur opener postscript salute
signed text titlePage titlePart trailer

transcr: line metamark mod retrace sourceDoc surfaceGrp surplus

verse: rhyme

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address cb choice date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index lb media milestone
note pb ref rs term time title

figures: formula notatedMusic

gaiji: g

header: idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material
objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat
location nameLink offset orgName persName population roleName settlement
surname terrain trait

textcrit: app witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus
undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```
element witDetail
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.responsibility.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  attribute wit { list { data.pointer+ } },
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

Example

```
<app type="substantive">
  <rdgGrp type="subvariants">
    <lem xml:id="W026x" wit="#E1 #HG">Experience</lem>
    <rdg wit="#Ha4">Experiens</rdg>
  </rdgGrp>
</app>
<witDetail
  target="#W026x"
  resp="#PR"
  wit="#E1"
  type="presentation">Ornamental capital.</witDetail>

```

Note The <witDetail> element should be regarded as a specialized type of <note> element; it is synonymous with <note type='witnessDetail'>, but differs from the in the omission of some attributes seldom applicable to notes within critical apparatus, and in the provision of the wit attribute, which permits an application to extract all annotation concerning a particular witness or witnesses from the apparatus. It also

differs in that the location of a <witDetail> element is not significant and may not be used to imply the point of attachment for the annotation; this must be explicitly given by means of the target attribute.

<witEnd/> (fragmented witness end) indicates the end, or suspension, of the text of a fragmentary witness. [12.1.5.]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.rdgPart (@wit)

Member of model.rdgPart

Contained by

textcrit: lem rdg

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element witEnd { att.global.attributes, att.rdgPart.attributes, empty }
```

Example

```
<app>  
  <lem wit="#El #Hg">Experience</lem>  
  <rdg wit="#Ha4">Ex<g ref="#per"/>  
    <witEnd/>  
  </rdg>  
</app>
```

<witStart/> (fragmented witness start) indicates the beginning, or resumption, of the text of a fragmentary witness. [12.1.5.]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space)
(att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude,
@select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change
(@change)) att.rdgPart (@wit)

Member of model.rdgPart

Contained by

textcrit: lem rdg

May contain Empty element

Declaration

```
element witStart { att.global.attributes, att.rdgPart.attributes, empty }
```

Example

```
<app>  
  <lem wit="#El #Hg">Auctoritee</lem>  
  <rdg wit="#La #Ra2">auctorite</rdg>  
  <rdg wit="#X">
```

```
<witStart/>auctorite</rdg>
</app>
```

<witness> contains either a description of a single witness referred to within the critical apparatus, or a list of witnesses which is to be referred to by a single sigil. [12.1.]

Module textcrit

Attributes Attributes att.global (@xml:id, @n, @xml:lang, @style, @xml:space) (att.global.linking (@corresp, @synch, @sameAs, @copyOf, @next, @prev, @exclude, @select)) (att.global.analytic (@ana)) (att.global.facs (@facs)) (att.global.change (@change)) att.sortable (@sortKey)

Member of

Contained by

textcrit: listWit

May contain

core: address bibl biblStruct choice cit date emph foreign hi label list q quote ref rs stage term time title

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: table

header: biblFull idno

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: listApp listWit

Declaration

```
element witness
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.sortable.attributes,
  macro.limitedContent}

```

Example

```
<listWit>
  <witness xml:id="EL">Ellesmere, Huntingdon Library 26.C.9</witness>
  <witness xml:id="HG">Hengwrt, National Library of Wales,
    Aberystwyth, Peniarth 392D</witness>
  <witness xml:id="RA2">Bodleian Library Rawlinson Poetic 149
    (see further <ptr
      target="http://www.examples.com/MSdescs#MSRP149"/></witness>
</listWit>
```

Note The content of the <witness> element may give bibliographic information about the witness or witness group, or it may be empty.

<**xr**> (cross-reference phrase) contains a phrase, sentence, or icon referring the reader to some other location in this or another text. [9.3.5.3.]

Module dictionaries

Attributes *Attributes* att.lexicographic (*@expand*, *@norm*, *@split*, *@value*, *@orig*, *@location*, *@mergedIn*, *@opt*) (att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*))

@type indicates the type of cross reference, using any convenient typology.

Status Recommended

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include: **syn** (synonym) cross reference for synonym information

etym (etymological) etymological information

cf (compare or consult) related or similar term

illus (illustration) illustration of an object

Member of model.entryPart model.entryPart.top

Contained by

core: cit

dictionaries: etym re sense

namesdates: nym

May contain

analysis: c pc w

core: address bibl biblStruct cb choice cit date emph foreign gap gb graphic hi index label lb list media milestone note pb q quote ref rs stage term time title

dictionaries: usg

drama: camera caption castList move sound tech view

figures: formula notatedMusic table

gaiji: g

header: biblFull idno

iso-fs: fLib fs

linking: anchor

msdescription: catchwords depth dim dimensions height heraldry locus locusGrp material msDesc objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark width

namesdates: addName affiliation climate country forename genName geo geogFeat listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location nameLink offset orgName persName population relationGrp roleName settlement surname terrain trait

textcrit: app listApp listWit witDetail

transcr: addSpan delSpan listTranspose metamark mod redo retrace substJoin surplus undo

verse: caesura rhyme

Declaration

```

element xr
{
  att.lexicographic.attributes,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | usg | model.global )*
}

```

Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>lavage</orth>
  </form>
  <etym>[Fr. < mentioned>laver</mentioned>; L.
<mentioned>lavare</mentioned>, to wash;
  <xr>see <ref>lather</ref>
  </xr>]. </etym>
</entry>

```

Example

```

<entry>
  <form>
    <orth>lawful</orth>
  </form>
  <xr type="syn">SYN. see <ref>legal</ref>
</xr>
</entry>

```

Note May contain character data and phrase-level elements; usually contains a <ref> or a <ptr> element. This element encloses both the actual indication of the location referred to, which may be tagged using the <ref> or <ptr> elements, and any accompanying material which gives more information about why the reader is being referred there.

2.2 Model classes

model.addrPart groups elements such as names or postal codes which may appear as part of a postal address. [3.5.2.]

Module tei

Used by address

Members model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[orgName persName]
 model.offsetLike[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName
 nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country
 settlement] climate location population terrain trait] idno rs] addrLine

model.addressLike groups elements used to represent a postal or e-mail address. [1.]

Module tei

Used by location model.pPart.data

Members address affiliation

model.availabilityPart groups elements such as licences and paragraphs of text which may appear as part of an availability statment [2.2.4.]

Module tei

Used by availability

Members licence

model.biblLike groups elements containing a bibliographic description. [3.11.]

Module tei

Used by cit climate event location model.inter org place population sourceDesc terrain trait

Members bibl biblFull biblStruct listRelation msDesc relationGrp

model.biblPart groups elements which represent components of a bibliographic description. [3.11.]

Module tei

Used by bibl

Members model.imprintPart[pubPlace publisher] model.respLike[author editor] bibl citedRange edition extent msIdentifier textLang

model.castItemPart groups component elements of an entry in a cast list, such as dramatic role or actor's name.

Module tei

Used by castItem

Members actor role roleDesc

model.choicePart groups elements (other than <choice> itself) which can be used within a <choice> alternation. [3.4.]

Module tei

Used by choice

Members abbr corr expan orig reg sic unclear

model.common groups common chunk- and inter-level elements. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by body castList div epigraph epilogue figure performance postscript prologue set

Members model.divPart[model.lLike[l] model.pLike[p] figure lg sp spGrp] model.entryLike[entry superEntry] model.inter[model.biblLike[bibl biblFull biblStruct listRelation msDesc relationGrp] model.egLike model.labelLike[label] model.listLike[list listApp listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listWit table] model.qLike[model.quoteLike[cit quote] q] model.stageLike[camera caption move sound stage tech view] castList]

Note This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements; it is used in many content models, including those for textual divisions.

model.dateLike groups elements containing temporal expressions. [3.5.4. 13.3.6.]

Module tei

Used by imprint model.pPart.data

Members date time

model.dimLike groups elements which describe a measurement forming part of the physical dimensions of some object.

Module tei

Used by dimensions

Members depth height width

model.divBottom groups elements appearing at the end of a text division. [4.2.]

Module tei

Used by body div epilogue group lg list performance prologue table

Members model.divBottomPart[*closer* *postscript* *signed* *trailer*] model.divWrapper[*byline* *dateline* *docAuthor* *docDate* *epigraph* *salute*]

model.divBottomPart groups elements which can occur only at the end of a text division. [4.6.]

Module tei

Used by back figure front model.divBottom *postscript*

Members *closer* *postscript* *signed* *trailer*

model.divLike groups elements used to represent un-numbered generic structural divisions.

Module tei

Used by back body div front

Members div

model.divPart groups paragraph-level elements appearing directly within divisions. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by macro.specialPara model.common

Members model.lLike[l] model.pLike[p] figure lg sp spGrp

Note Note that this element class does not include members of the `model.inter` class, which can appear either within or between paragraph-level items.

model.divTop groups elements appearing at the beginning of a text division. [4.2.]

Module tei

Used by body castList div epilogue group lg list performance prologue

Members model.divTopPart[*model.headLike*[*head*] *opener*] model.divWrapper[*byline* *dateline* *docAuthor* *docDate* *epigraph* *salute*]

model.divTopPart groups elements which can occur only at the beginning of a text division. [4.6.]

Module tei

Used by model.divTop postscript

Members model.headLike[head] opener

model.divWrapper groups elements which can appear at either top or bottom of a textual division. [4.2.]

Module tei

Used by model.divBottom model.divTop

Members byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph salute

model.editorialDeclPart groups elements which may be used inside <editorialDecl> and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by editorialDecl

Members normalization

model.emphLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct and to which a specific function can be attributed. [3.3.]

Module tei

Used by model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase

Members emph foreign term title

model.encodingDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <encodingDesc> and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by encodingDesc

Members charDecl editorialDecl listPrefixDef styleDefDecl variantEncoding

model.entryLike groups elements structurally analogous to paragraphs within dictionaries. [9.1. 1.3.]

Module dictionaries

Used by model.common

Members entry superEntry

model.entryPart groups non-morphological elements appearing within a dictionary entry. [9.1.]

Module tei

Used by cit nym

Members def etym form gramGrp pos re sense subc superEntry usg xr

model.entryPart.top groups high level elements within a structured dictionary entry [9.2.]

Module tei

Used by re sense

Members cit def etym form gramGrp re usg xr

Note Members of this class typically contain related parts of a dictionary entry which form a coherent subdivision, for example a particular sense, homonym, etc.

model.featureVal groups elements which represent feature values in feature structures.

Module tei

Used by f

Members model.featureVal.complex[fs] model.featureVal.single[symbol]

model.featureVal.complex groups elements which express complex feature values in feature structures.

Module tei

Used by model.featureVal

Members fs

model.featureVal.single group elements used to represent atomic feature values in feature structures.

Module tei

Used by model.featureVal

Members symbol

model.formPart groups elements allowed within a <form> element in a dictionary. [9.3.1.]

Module dictionaries

Used by form

Members model.gramPart[model.morphLike[gen] gramGrp pos subc usg] form

model.frontPart groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter. [7.1.]

Module tei

Used by back front

Members model.frontPart.drama[castList epilogue performance prologue set] titlePage

model.frontPart.drama groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter of performance texts only. [7.1.]

Module tei

Used by model.frontPart

Members castList epilogue performance prologue set

model.gLike groups elements used to represent individual non-Unicode characters or glyphs.

Module tei

Used by bibl byline castItem closer date docImprint etym f form gramGrp head idno lem macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara macro.xtext opener origDate pc rdg re sense time w xr

Members g

model.global groups elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by address app back bibl body byline castGroup castItem castList cit closer date div docImprint docTitle epigraph epilogue etym figure form front gramGrp group head imprint lem lg line list macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.phraseSeq.limited macro.specialPara msItem opener origDate performance person postscript prologue rdg re sense set sourceDoc sp spGrp surfaceGrp table text time titlePage w xr

Members model.global.edit[addSpan delSpan gap] model.global.meta[fLib fs index listTranspose substJoin] model.milestoneLike[anchor cb gb lb milestone pb] model.noteLike[note witDetail] metamark notatedMusic

model.global.edit groups globally available elements which perform a specifically editorial function. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by model.global

Members addSpan delSpan gap

model.global.meta groups globally available elements which describe the status of other elements. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by model.global

Members fLib fs index listTranspose substJoin

Note Elements in this class are typically used to hold groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by provide indications of certainty etc. It may find be convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same division as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text.

model.gramPart groups elements allowed within a <gramGrp> element in a dictionary. [9.3.2.]

Module dictionaries

Used by gramGrp model.formPart

Members model.morphLike[gen] gramGrp pos subc usg

model.graphicLike groups elements containing images, formulae, and similar objects. [3.9.]

Module tei

Used by char figure formula glyph model.phrase sourceDoc table

Members formula graphic media

model.headLike groups elements used to provide a title or heading at the start of a text division.

Module tei

Used by castGroup climate event figure listApp listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listWit model.divTopPart msDesc msPart org place population set spGrp table terrain trait

Members head

model.hiLike groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct but to which no specific function can be attributed. [3.3.]

Module tei

Used by formula model.highlighted model.limitedPhrase model.linePart w

Members hi

model.highlighted groups phrase-level elements which are typographically distinct. [3.3.]

Module tei

Used by bibl model.phrase

Members model.emphLike[emph foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi]

model.imprintPart groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints. [3.11.]

Module tei

Used by imprint model.biblPart

Members pubPlace publisher

model.inter groups elements which can appear either within or between paragraph-like elements. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by etym form gramGrp head lem macro.limitedContent macro.paraContent
macro.specialPara model.common rdg xr

Members model.biblLike[bibl biblFull biblStruct listRelation msDesc relationGrp]
model.egLike model.labelLike[label] model.listLike[list listApp listEvent listNym
listOrg listPerson listPlace listWit table] model.qLike[model.quoteLike[cit quote] q]
model.stageLike[camera caption move sound stage tech view] castList

model.lLike groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

Module tei

Used by head lg model.divPart sp

Members l

model.lPart groups phrase-level elements which may appear within verse only. [6.2.]

Module tei

Used by model.phrase w

Members caesura rhyme

model.labelLike groups elements used to gloss or explain other parts of a document.

Module tei

Used by climate event lg location model.inter notatedMusic org place population terrain
trait

Members label

model.limitedPhrase groups phrase-level elements excluding those elements
primarily intended for transcription of existing sources. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by macro.limitedContent macro.phraseSeq.limited

Members model.emphLike[emph foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi]
model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address affiliation] model.dateLike[date time]
model.measureLike[depth dim geo height width]
model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[orgName persName]
model.offsetLike[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName
nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country
settlement] climate location population terrain trait] idno rs]]
model.pPart.editorial[choice] model.pPart.msdesc[catchwords dimensions heraldry
locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp
watermark] model.ptrLike[ref]

model.linePart groups transcriptional elements which appear within lines or zones of a
source-oriented transcription within a <sourceDoc> element.

Module tei

Used by line

Members model.hiLike[hi] model.pPart.transcriptional[app mod redo retrace surplus undo]
model.segLike[c pc w] line

model.listLike groups list-like elements. [3.7.]

Module tei

Used by model.inter sourceDesc sp

Members list listApp listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listWit table

model.measureLike groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning. [3.5.3.]

Module tei

Used by location model.pPart.data

Members depth dim geo height width

model.milestoneLike groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems. [1.3. 3.10.3.]

Module tei

Used by entry model.global

Members anchor cb gb lb milestone pb

model.morphLike groups elements which provide morphological information within a dictionary entry. [9.3.]

Module dictionaries

Used by etym model.gramPart

Members gen

model.msItemPart groups elements which can appear within a manuscript item description.

Module tei

Used by msItem

Members model.msQuoteLike[colophon explicit finalRubric incipit rubric title]
model.quoteLike[cit quote] model.respLike[author editor] bibl biblStruct decoNote
filiation msItem msItemStruct textLang

model.msQuoteLike groups elements which represent passages such as titles quoted from a manuscript as a part of its description.

Module tei

Used by model.msItemPart

Members colophon explicit finalRubric incipit rubric title

model.nameLike groups elements which name or refer to a person, place, or organization.

Module tei

Used by model.addrPart model.pPart.data org

Members model.nameLike.agent[orgName persName] model.offsetLike[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement] climate location population terrain trait] idno rs

Note A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

model.nameLike.agent groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies. [3.5.]

Module tei

Used by model.nameLike

Members orgName persName

Note This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

model.noteLike groups globally-available note-like elements. [3.8.]

Module tei

Used by adminInfo biblStruct char climate event glyph location model.global monogr msItemStruct notesStmt org place population terrain trait

Members note witDetail

model.offsetLike groups elements which can appear only as part of a place name. [13.2.3.]

Module tei

Used by location model.nameLike

Members geogFeat offset

model.orgPart groups elements which form part of the description of an organization.

Module tei

Used by org

Members listOrg listPerson listPlace

model.pLike groups paragraph-like elements.

Module tei

Used by availability binding bindingDesc calendar climate custodialHist decoDesc editorialDecl encodingDesc event handDesc history langKnowledge layoutDesc

listRelation model.divPart msContents msDesc msItem msItemStruct msPart
 normalization nym objectDesc org person personGrp physDesc place population
 prefixDef publicationStmt recordHist relationGrp scriptDesc seal sealDesc seriesStmt
 sourceDesc sp styleDefDecl supportDesc terrain trait typeDesc

Members p

model.pLike.front groups paragraph-like elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter. [4.6.]

Module tei

Used by back front

Members byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph head titlePart

model.pPart.data groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data. [3.5.]

Module tei

Used by bibl model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

Members model.addressLike[address affiliation] model.dateLike[date time]
 model.measureLike[depth dim geo height width]
 model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[orgName persName]
 model.offsetLike[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName
 nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country
 settlement] climate location population terrain trait] idno rs]

model.pPart.edit groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription. [3.4.]

Module tei

Used by bibl model.phrase pc w

Members model.pPart.editorial[choice] model.pPart.transcriptional[app mod redo retrace surplus undo]

model.pPart.editorial groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial interventions that may be useful both in transcribing and in authoring. [3.4.]

Module tei

Used by model.limitedPhrase model.pPart.edit

Members choice

model.pPart.msdesc groups phrase-level elements used in manuscript description. [10.]

Module tei

Used by model.limitedPhrase model.phrase

Members catchwords dimensions heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate
origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark

model.pPart.transcriptional groups phrase-level elements used for editorial transcription of pre-existing source materials. [3.4.]

Module tei

Used by model.linePart model.pPart.edit

Members app mod redo retrace surplus undo

model.persEventLike groups elements describing specific events in a person's history, for example birth, marriage, or appointment.

Module tei

Used by model.personPart

Members birth death event listEvent

Note These are not characteristics of an individual, but often cause an individual to gain such characteristics, or to enter a new state.

model.persNamePart groups elements which form part of a personal name. [13.2.1.]

Module namesdates

Used by model.nameLike

Members addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname

model.persStateLike groups elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, or name.

Module tei

Used by model.personPart

Members affiliation age education faith floruit langKnowledge nationality occupation
persName residence sex socecStatus trait

Note These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others.

model.personLike groups elements which provide information about people and their relationships.

Module tei

Used by listPerson org

Members org person personGrp

model.personPart groups elements which form part of the description of a person. [15.2.2.]

Module tei

Used by person personGrp

Members model.persEventLike[birth death event listEvent] model.persStateLike[affiliation age education faith floruit langKnowledge nationality occupation persName residence sex socecStatus trait] bibl idno

model.phrase groups elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by byline castItem closer date docImprint etym form gramGrp head lem macro.paraContent macro.phraseSeq macro.specialPara opener origDate rdg re sense time xr

Members model.graphicLike[formula graphic media] model.highlighted[model.emphLike[emph foreign term title] model.hiLike[hi]] model.lPart[caesura rhyme] model.pPart.data[model.addressLike[address affiliation] model.dateLike[date time] model.measureLike[depth dim geo height width] model.nameLike[model.nameLike.agent[orgName persName] model.offsetLike[geogFeat offset] model.persNamePart[addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname] model.placeStateLike[model.placeNamePart[country settlement] climate location population terrain trait] idno rs]] model.pPart.edit[model.pPart.editorial[choice] model.pPart.transcriptional[app mod redo retrace surplus undo]] model.pPart.msdesc[catchwords dimensions heraldry locus locusGrp material objectType origDate origPlace secFol signatures stamp watermark] model.ptrLike[ref] model.segLike[c pc w]

Note This class of elements can occur only within larger elements of the class *inter* or *chunk*. In prose, this means these elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

model.physDescPart groups specialized elements forming part of the physical description of a manuscript or similar written source.

Module tei

Used by physDesc

Members accMat additions bindingDesc decoDesc handDesc musicNotation objectDesc scriptDesc sealDesc typeDesc

model.placeEventLike groups elements which describe events at or affecting a place.

Module tei

Used by place

Members event

model.placeLike groups elements used to provide information about places and their relationships.

Module tei

Used by listPlace org place

Members place

model.placeNamePart groups elements which form part of a place name. [13.2.3.]

Module tei

Used by altIdentifier location model.placeStateLike msIdentifier

Members country settlement

model.placeStateLike groups elements which describe changing states of a place.

Module tei

Used by model.nameLike place

Members model.placeNamePart[country settlement] climate location population terrain
trait

model.profileDescPart groups elements which may be used inside <profileDesc> and appear multiple times.

Module tei

Used by profileDesc

Members calendarDesc handNotes listTranspose

model.ptrLike groups elements used for purposes of location and reference. [3.6.]

Module tei

Used by bibl biblStruct cit model.limitedPhrase model.phrase notatedMusic

Members ref

model.publicationStmtPart groups elements which may appear within the <publicationStmt> element of the TEI Header. [2.2.4.]

Module tei

Used by publicationStmt

Members address authority availability date idno pubPlace publisher

model.qLike groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements. [3.3.]

Module tei

Used by cit model.inter sp

Members model.quoteLike[cit quote] q

model.quoteLike groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

Module tei

Used by model.msItemPart model.qLike

Members cit quote

model.rdgLike groups elements which contain a single reading, other than the lemma, within a textual variation. [12.1.]

Module textcrit

Used by app rdgGrp

Members rdg

Note This class allows for variants of the <rdg> element to be easily created via TEI customizations.

model.rdgPart groups elements which mark the beginning or ending of a fragmentary manuscript or other witness. [12.1.5.]

Module textcrit

Used by lem rdg

Members lacunaEnd lacunaStart wit witEnd witStart

Note These elements may appear anywhere within the elements <lem> and <rdg>, and also within any of their constituent elements.

model.resourceLike groups non-textual elements which may appear together with a header and a text to constitute a TEI document. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by TEI

Members sourceDoc

model.respLike groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual or other significant responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

Module tei

Used by model.biblPart model.msItemPart titleStmnt

Members author editor

model.segLike groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. 17.1.]

Module tei

Used by bibl model.linePart model.phrase

Members c pc w

Note The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the <segmentation> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header.

model.stageLike groups elements containing stage directions or similar things defined by the module for performance texts. [7.3.]

Module tei

Used by lg model.inter sp spGrp

Members camera caption move sound stage tech view

Note Stage directions are members of class *inter*: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements.

model.teiHeaderPart groups high level elements which may appear more than once in a TEI Header.

Module tei

Used by teiHeader

Members encodingDesc profileDesc

model.titlepagePart groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page, such as <docTitle>, <docAuthor>, <docImprint>, or <epigraph>. [4.6.]

Module tei

Used by msItem titlePage

Members byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epigraph figure graphic imprimatur titlePart

2.3 Attribute classes

att.ascribed provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual. [1.]

Module tei

Members change move q sp spGrp

Attributes Attributes

@who indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values For transcribed speech, this will typically identify a participant or participant group; in other contexts, it will point to any identified <person> element.

In the following example from Hamlet, speeches (<sp>) in the body of the play are linked to <castItem> elements in the <castList> using the who attribute. **<castItem**

```
  type="role">
  <role
    xml:id="Barnardo">Barnardo</role>
</castItem>
<castItem
  type="role">
  <role
    xml:id="Francisco">Francisco</role>
  <roleDesc>a soldier</roleDesc>
</castItem>
<!-- ... -->
```

```

<sp
  who="#Barnardo">
  <speaker>Bernardo</speaker>
  <l
    n="1">Who's there?</l>
</sp>
<sp
  who="#Francisco">
  <speaker>Francisco</speaker>
  <l
    n="2">Nay, answer me: stand, and unfold yourself.</l>
</sp>

```

att.breaking provides an attribute to indicate whether or not the element concerned is considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace. [3.10.3.]

Module tei

Members cb gb lb milestone pb

Attributes Attributes

@break indicates whether or not the element bearing this attribute should be considered to mark the end of an orthographic token in the same way as whitespace.

Status Recommended

Datatype data.enumerated

Sample values include **yes** the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

no the element bearing this attribute is considered not to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token irrespective of the presence of any adjacent whitespace

maybe no assertion is made as to whether or not the element bearing this attribute is considered to mark the end of any adjacent orthographic token.

In the following lines from the ‘Dream of the Rood’, linebreaks occur in the middle of the words *lādost* and *reord-berendum*. **<ab>**
 ...epesa tome iu icpæs Ʒeporden pita heardoft . leodum la<b
 break="no"/>
 ðost ærþan ichim lifes pēƷ rihtne Ʒerymde reord be<b
 break="no"/>
 rendum hƷæt me þaƷepeorðode puldres ealdor ofer...
</ab>

att.canonical provides attributes which can be used to associate a representation such as a name or title with canonical information about the object being named or referenced.

Module tei

Members att.naming[att.personal[addName forename genName orgName persName roleName surname] affiliation author birth climate collection country death editor education event geogFeat institution nationality occupation origPlace population

pubPlace repository residence rs socecStatus terrain trait] docAuthor docTitle faith
material objectType relation term title

Attributes Attributes

@key provides an externally-defined means of identifying the entity (or entities) being named, using a coded value of some kind.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.text`

`<author>`

`<name`

`key="name 427308"`

`type="organisation">[New Zealand Parliament, Legislative Council]</name>`

`</author>`

Note The value may be a unique identifier from a database, or any other externally-defined string identifying the referent.

@ref (reference) provides an explicit means of locating a full definition for the entity being named by means of one or more URIs.

Status Optional

Datatype 1-∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name identifies several distinct entities.

att.coordinated elements which can be positioned within a two dimensional coordinate system.

Module transcr

Members line surfaceGrp

Attributes Attributes

@start indicates the element within a transcription of the text containing at least the start of the writing represented by this zone or surface.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

@ulx gives the x coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@uly gives the y coordinate value for the upper left corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@lrx gives the x coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@lry gives the y coordinate value for the lower right corner of a rectangular space.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

att.dateable provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dates, times, or dateable events.

Module tei

Members acquisition affiliation age binding birth change climate country custEvent death education event faith floruit geogFeat langKnowledge langKnown licence location nationality occupation orgName origDate origPlace origin persName population provenance relation residence seal sex socecStatus stamp terrain time trait

Attributes Attributes att.dateable.w3c (@when, @notBefore, @notAfter, @from, @to) att.dateable.iso (@when-iso, @notBefore-iso, @notAfter-iso, @from-iso, @to-iso) att.dateable.custom (@when-custom, @notBefore-custom, @notAfter-custom, @from-custom, @to-custom, @datingPoint, @datingMethod)

@calendar indicates the system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of this element belongs.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Schematron <sch:rule context="tei:*[@calendar]">

```
<sch:assert test="string-length(.) gt 0">@calendar indicates the
system or calendar to which the date represented by the content of
this element belongs, but this <sch:name/> element has no textual
content.</sch:assert></sch:rule>
```

He was born on **<date**

```
calendar="#Gregorian">Feb. 22, 1732</date>
```

(**<date**

```
calendar="#Julian"
```

```
when="1732-02-22"> Feb. 11, 1731/32, O.S.</date>).

```

@period supplies a pointer to some location defining a named period of time within which the dateable item is understood to have occurred.

Status Optional

Datatype data.pointer

Note This “superclass” provides attributes that can be used to provide normalized values of temporal information. By default, the attributes from the **att.dateable.w3c** class are provided. If the module for names & dates is loaded, this class also provides attributes from the **att.dateable.iso** and **att.dateable.custom** classes. In general, the possible values of attributes restricted to the W3C datatypes form a subset of those values available via the ISO 8601 standard. However, the greater expressiveness of the ISO datatypes may not be needed, and there exists much greater software support for the W3C datatypes.

att.dateable.custom provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dateable events to a custom dating system (i.e. other than the Gregorian used by W3 and ISO). [13.3.6.]

Module namesdates

Members att.dateable[acquisition affiliation age binding birth change climate country custEvent death education event faith floruit geogFeat langKnowledge langKnown licence location nationality occupation orgName origDate origPlace origin persName population provenance relation residence seal sex socecStatus stamp terrain time trait]

Attributes Attributes

@when-custom supplies the value of a date or time in some standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values Any string representing a valid date, time, or one of a variety of combinations.

The following are examples of custom date or time formats that are *not* valid ISO or W3C format normalizations, normalized to a different dating system

```
<p>Alhazen died in Cairo on the  
<date  
  when="1040-03-06"  
  when-custom="431-06-12"> 12th day of Jumada t-Tania, 430
```

```
AH
```

```
</date>.</p>
```

```
<p>The current world will end at the
```

```
<date
```

```
  when="2012-12-21"
```

```
  when-custom="13.0.0.0.0">end of B'ak'tun 13</date>.</p>
```

```
<p>The Battle of Meggidu
```

```
(<date
```

```
  when-custom="Thutmose_III:23">23rd year of reign of
```

```
Thutmose III</date>).</p>
```

```
<p>Esidorus bixit in pace annos LXX plus minus sub
```

```
<date
```

```
  when-custom="Ind:4-10-11">die XI mensis Octobris
```

```
indictione IIII</date>
```

```
</p>Not all custom date formulations will have Gregorian equivalents. The when-custom attribute and other custom dating are not constrained to a datatype by the TEI, but individual projects are recommended to regularize and document their dating formats.
```

@notBefore-custom specifies the earliest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values A normalized form of temporal expression.

@notAfter-custom specifies the latest possible date for the event in some custom standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values A normalized form of temporal expression.

@from-custom indicates the starting point of the period in some standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values A normalized form of temporal expression.

@to-custom indicates the ending point of the period in some standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values A normalized form of temporal expression.

@datingPoint supplies a pointer to some location defining a named point in time with reference to which the datable item is understood to have occurred

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

@datingMethod supplies a pointer to a `<calendar>` element or other means of interpreting the values of the custom dating attributes.

Status Optional*Datatype* data.pointer

att.datable.iso provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the ISO 8601 standard. [13.3.6.]

Module namesdates

Members att.datable[acquisition affiliation age binding birth change climate country custEvent death education event faith floruit geogFeat langKnowledge langKnown licence location nationality occupation orgName origDate origPlace origin persName population provenance relation residence seal sex socecStatus stamp terrain time trait]

Attributes Attributes

@when-iso supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.

Status Optional*Datatype* data.temporal.iso

Values Any string representing a valid date, time, or one of a variety of combinations.

The following are examples of ISO date, time, and date & time formats that are *not* valid W3C format normalizations. **<date**

when-iso="1996-09-24T07:25+00">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>

<date

when-iso="1996-09-24T03:25-04">Sept. 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>

<time

when-iso="1999-01-04T20:42-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>

<time

when-iso="1999-W01-1T20,70-05">4 Jan 1999 at 8:42 pm</time>

<date

when-iso="2006-05-18T10:03">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May</date>

<time

when-iso="03:00">3 A.M.</time>

<time

when-iso="14">around two</time>

<time

when-iso="15,5">half past three</time>All of the examples of the when attribute in the att.datable.w3c class are also valid with respect to this attribute.

He likes to be punctual. I said <q>

<time

when-iso="12">around noon</time>

</q>, and he showed up at **<time**

when-iso="12:00:00">12 O'clock</time> on the dot.The second occurrence of **<time>** could have been encoded with the when attribute, as 12:00:00 is a valid time with respect to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes* specification. The first occurrence could not.

Note The value of the when-iso attribute should be the normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by ISO 8601, using the Gregorian calendar.

@notBefore-iso specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.iso`

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming ISO 8601.

@notAfter-iso specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.iso`

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming ISO 8601.

@from-iso indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.iso`

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming ISO 8601.

@to-iso indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.iso`

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming ISO 8601.

Note If both when-iso and dur-iso are specified, the values should be interpreted as indicating a span of time by its starting time (or date) and duration. That is,

```
<date when-iso="2007-06-01" dur-iso="P8D"/>
```

indicates the same time period as

```
<date when-iso="2007-06-01/P8D"/>
```

In providing a “regularized” form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

att.datable.w3c provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain datable events using the W3C datatypes. [3.5.4. 13.3.6.]

Module tei

Members att.datable[acquisition affiliation age binding birth change climate country custEvent death education event faith floruit geogFeat langKnowledge langKnown licence location nationality occupation orgName origDate origPlace origin persName population provenance relation residence seal sex socecStatus stamp terrain time trait]

Attributes Attributes

@when supplies the value of the date or time in a standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.w3c`

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats. **<p>**

```
<date when="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>
```

```

<date
  when="1996-09-24T07:25:00Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25
in the morning</date>
<time
  when="1999-01-04T20:42:00-05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8
pm</time>
<time
  when="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
<date
  when="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
<date
  when="--06-12">June 12th</date>
<date
  when="---01">the first of the month</date>
<date
  when="--08">August</date>
<date
  when="2006">MMVI</date>
<date
  when="0056">AD 56</date>
<date
  when="-0056">56 BC</date>
</p>

```

This list begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday, i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the <date calendar="#Julian" when="1632-06-06">27th of May (old style)</date>.

```

<opener>
<dateline>
  <placeName>Dorchester, Village,</placeName>
  <date
    when="1828-03-02">March 2d. 1828.</date>
</dateline>
<salute>To
  Mrs. Cornell,</salute> Sunday <time
    when="12:00:00">noon.</time>
</opener>

```

Note The value of the when attribute should be the normalized representation of the date, time, or combined date & time intended, in any of the standard formats specified by *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*, using the Gregorian calendar. The most commonly-encountered format for the date part of the when attribute is yyyy-mm-dd, but yyyy, --mm, ---dd, yyyy-mm, or --mm-dd may also be used. For the time part, the form hh:mm:ss is used. Note that this format does not currently permit use of the value 0000 to represent the year 1 BCE; instead the value -0001 should be used.

@notBefore specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype data.temporal.w3c

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the *W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition*.

@notAfter specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.w3c`

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

@from indicates the starting point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.w3c`

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

@to indicates the ending point of the period in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.temporal.w3c`

Values A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition.

att.datcat introduces `dcr:datcat` and `dcr:ValueDatcat` attributes that may be used to align XML elements or attributes with the appropriate Data Categories (DCs) defined by the ISO 12620:2009 standard and stored in the Web repository called ISOcat at <http://www.isocat.org/>. [9.5.2. 18.3.]

Module `tei`

Members `att.lexicographic[def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr]`
`att.segLike[pc] f fs symbol`

Attributes Attributes

@datcat contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the given element with the appropriate Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

@valueDatcat contains a PID (persistent identifier) that aligns the content of the given element or the value of the given attribute with the appropriate simple Data Category (or categories) in ISOcat.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Example In this example `dcr:datcat` relates the feature name to the data category "partOfSpeech" and `dcr:valueDatcat` the feature value to the data category "commonNoun". Both these data categories reside in the ISOcat DCR at www.isocat.org, which is the DCR used by ISO TC37 and hosted by its registration authority, the MPI for Psycholinguistics in Nijmegen.

```
<fs
  xmlns:dcr="http://www.isocat.org/ns/dcr">
  <f
    name="POS"
    dcr:datcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1345"
    fVal="common noun"
    dcr:valueDatcat="http://www.isocat.org/datcat/DC-1256"/>
  </fs>
```

Note ISO 12620:2009 is a standard describing the data model and procedures for a Data

Category Registry (DCR). Data categories are defined as elementary descriptors in a linguistic structure. In the DCR data model each data category gets assigned a unique Persistent Identifier (PID), i.e., an URI. Linguistic resources or preferably their schemas that make use of data categories from a DCR should refer to them using this PID. For XML-based resources, like TEI documents, ISO 12620:2009 normative Annex A gives a small Data Category Reference XML vocabulary (also available online at <http://www.isocat.org/12620/>), which provides two attributes, `dcr:datcat` and `dcr:valueDatcat`.

att.declarable provides attributes for those elements in the TEI Header which may be independently selected by means of the special purpose `decls` attribute. [15.3.]

Module tei

Members availability bibl biblFull biblStruct editorialDecl listApp listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace normalization styleDefDecl

Attributes Attributes

@default indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.truthValue`

Legal values are: **true** This element is selected if its parent is selected

false This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.[Default]

Note The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter 15.3.. Only one element of a particular type may have a default attribute with a value of true.

att.dimensions provides attributes for describing the size of physical objects.

Module tei

Members att.editLike[att.transcriptional[addSpan delSpan mod redo retrace substJoin undo] affiliation age birth climate death education event faith floruit gap langKnowledge langKnown location nationality occupation org orgName origDate origPlace origin persName person place population relation residence sex socecStatus surplus terrain time trait] depth dim dimensions height width

Attributes Attributes att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*)

@unit names the unit used for the measurement

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **cm** (centimetres)

mm (millimetres)

in (inches)

lines lines of text

chars (characters) characters of text

@quantity specifies the length in the units specified

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@extent indicates the size of the object concerned using a project-specific vocabulary combining quantity and units in a single string of words.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.text`

Values any measurement phrase, e.g. *25 letters, 2 × 3 inches.*

```
<gap  
  extent="5 words"/>
```

```
<height  
  extent="half the page"/>
```

@precision characterizes the precision of the values specified by the other attributes.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.certainty`

@scope where the measurement summarizes more than one observation, specifies the applicability of this measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **all** measurement applies to all instances.

most measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.

range measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.

att.divLike provides attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions.

Module *tei*

Members *div lg*

Attributes *Attributes att.metrical (@met, @real, @rhyme) att.fragmentable (@part)*

@part *Status* Optional

att.docStatus provides attributes for use on metadata elements describing the status of a document.

Module *tei*

Members *bibl biblFull biblStruct change revisionDesc*

Attributes *Attributes*

@status describes the status of a document either currently or, when associated with a dated element, at the time indicated.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **approved**

candidate

cleared

deprecated

draft [Default]

embargoed

expired

frozen

galley
 proposed
 published
 recommendation
 submitted
 unfinished
 withdrawn

Example

```
<revisionDesc status="published">
  <change when="2010-10-21" status="published"/>
  <change when="2010-10-02" status="cleared"/>
  <change when="2010-08-02" status="embargoed"/>
  <change when="2010-05-01" status="frozen" who="#MSM"/>
  <change when="2010-03-01" status="draft" who="#LB"/>
</revisionDesc>
```

att.editLike provides attributes describing the nature of an encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind. [1.]

Module tei

Members att.transcriptional[addSpan delSpan mod redo retrace substJoin undo] affiliation age birth climate death education event faith floruit gap langKnowledge langKnown location nationality occupation org orgName origDate origPlace origin persName person place population relation residence sex socecStatus surplus terrain time trait

Attributes Attributes att.dimensions (@unit, @quantity, @extent, @precision, @scope) (att.ranging (@atLeast, @atMost, @min, @max, @confidence)) att.responsibility (@cert, @resp)

@evidence indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation.

Status Optional

Datatype 1-∞ occurrences of **data.enumerated** separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **internal** there is internal evidence to support the intervention.

external there is external evidence to support the intervention.

conjecture the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.

@source contains a list of one or more pointers indicating sources supporting the given intervention or interpretation.

Status Optional

Datatype 1-∞ occurrences of **data.pointer** separated by whitespace

Values A space-delimited series of sigla; each sigil should correspond to a witness or witness group and occur as the value of the xml:id attribute on a <witness> or <msDesc> element elsewhere in the document.

@instant indicates whether this is an instant revision or not.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.xTruthValue`

Default false

Note The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

att.edition provides attributes identifying the source edition from which some encoded feature derives.

Module tei

Members cb lb milestone pb

Attributes Attributes

@ed (edition) supplies an arbitrary identifier for the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.code` separated by whitespace

Values A string of characters or sigil used conventionally to identify the edition.

@edRef (edition reference) provides a pointer to the source edition in which the associated feature (for example, a page, column, or line break) occurs at this point in the text.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Example

```
<l>Of Mans First Disobedience,<lb ed="1674"/> and<lb ed="1667"/> the  
Fruit</l>  
<l>Of that Forbidden Tree, whose<lb ed="1667 1674"/> mortal tast</l>  
<l>Brought Death into the World,<lb ed="1667"/> and all<lb ed="1674"/> our  
woe,</l>
```

Example

```
<listBibl>  
  <bibl xml:id="stapledon1937">  
    <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,  
    <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Methuen</publisher>,  
    <date>1937</date>  
  </bibl>  
  <bibl xml:id="stapledon1968">  
    <author>Olaf Stapledon</author>,  
    <title>Starmaker</title>, <publisher>Dover</publisher>, <date>1968</date>  
  </bibl>  
</listBibl>  
<!-- .... -->  
<p>Looking into the future aeons from the supreme moment of  
the cosmos, I saw the populations still with all their  
strength maintaining the<pb n="411" edRef="#stapledon1968"/>essentials of  
their ancient culture,  
still living their personal lives in zest and endless  
novelty of action, ... I saw myself still
```

```
preserving, though with increasing difficulty, my lucid
con-<pb n="291" edRef="#stapledon1937"/>sciousness;</p>
```

att.enjamb (enjambement) groups elements bearing the enjamb attribute. [6.2.]

Module verse

Members 1

Attributes Attributes

@enjamb (enjambement) indicates that the end of a verse line is marked by enjambement.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **no** the line is end-stopped

yes the line in question runs on into the next

weak the line is weakly enjambed

strong the line is strongly enjambed

Note The usual practice will be to give the value “yes” to this attribute when enjambement is being marked, or the values “weak” and “strong” if degrees of enjambement are of interest; if no value is given, however, the attribute does not default to a value of “no”; this allows the attribute to be omitted entirely when enjambement is not of particular interest.

att.entryLike groups the different styles of dictionary entries. [9.1. 9.2.]

Module dictionaries

Members entry superEntry

Attributes Attributes

@type indicates type of entry, in dictionaries with multiple types.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **main** a main entry (default).[Default]

hom (homograph) groups information relating to one homograph within an entry.

xref (cross reference) a reduced entry whose only function is to point to another main entry (e.g. for forms of an irregular verb or for variant spellings: *was* pointing to *be*, or *esthete* to *aesthete*).

affix an entry for a prefix, infix, or suffix.

abbr (abbreviation) an entry for an abbreviation.

supplemental a supplemental entry (for use in dictionaries which issue supplements to their main work in which they include updated information about entries).

foreign an entry for a foreign word in a monolingual dictionary.

Note The global n attribute may be used to encode the homograph numbers attached to entries for homographs.

att.fragmentable groups structural elements which may be fragmented, usually as a consequence of some overlapping hierarchy.

Module tei

Members att.divLike[div lg] att.segLike[pc] l p

Attributes Attributes

@part specifies whether or not its parent element is fragmented in some way, typically by some other overlapping structure : for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas, a paragraph which is split across a page division, a verse line which is divided between two speakers.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **Y** (yes) the element is fragmented in some (unspecified) respect

N (no) either the element is not fragmented, or no claim is made as to its completeness.[Default]

I (initial) this is the initial part of a fragmented element

M (medial) this is a medial part of a fragmented element

F (final) this is the final part of a fragmented element

Note The values I, M, or F should be used only where it is clear how the element may be reconstituted.

att.global provides attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme.

Module tei

Members TEI accMat acquisition actor addName addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo affiliation age altIdentifier app author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblStruct binding bindingDesc birth body byline c caesura calendar calendarDesc camera caption castGroup castItem castList catchwords cb cell change char charDecl charName charProp cit citedRange climate closer collation collection colophon condition country custEvent custodialHist dateline death decoDesc decoNote def delSpan depth dim dimensions div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editor editorialDecl education emph encodingDesc entry epigraph epilogue etym event explicit extent f fLib faith figDesc fileDesc filiation finalRubric floruit foliation foreign forename form formula front fs g gap gb gen genName geo geogFeat glyph glyphName graphic group handDesc handNote handNotes head height heraldry hi history idno imprimatur imprint incipit index institution item l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart langKnowledge langKnown layout layoutDesc lb lem lg licence line list listApp listChange listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef listRelation listTranspose listWit localName location locus locusGrp mapping material media metamark milestone mod monogr move msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation nameLink nationality normalization notatedMusic notesStmt nym objectDesc objectType occupation offset opener org orgName origDate origPlace origin p pb pc performance persName person personGrp physDesc place population pos postscript prefixDef profileDesc prologue provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote rdg rdgGrp re recordHist redo ref relation relationGrp repository residence retrace revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc roleName row rs rubric salute

scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seriesStmt set sex signatures signed
 socecStatus sound source sourceDesc sourceDoc sp spGrp speaker stage stamp
 styleDefDecl subc substJoin summary superEntry support supportDesc surfaceGrp
 surname surplus surrogates symbol table tech teiHeader term terrain text textLang
 time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer trait transpose typeDesc typeNote
 undo unicodeName usg value variantEncoding view watermark width wit witDetail
 witEnd witStart witness

Attributes Attributes att.global.linking (*@corresp*, *@synch*, *@sameAs*, *@copyOf*, *@next*,
@prev, *@exclude*, *@select*) att.global.analytic (*@ana*) att.global.facs (*@facs*)
 att.global.change (*@change*)

@xml:id (identifier) provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the
 attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype **xsd:ID**

Note The xml:id attribute may be used to specify a canonical reference
 for an element; see section 3.10..

@n (number) gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not
 necessarily unique within the document.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.text**

Values the value consists of a single token which may however contain
 punctuation characters, whitespace or word separating characters.
 It need not be restricted to numbers.

Note The n attribute may be used to specify the numbering of chapters,
 sections, list items, etc.; it may also be used in the specification of a
 standard reference system for the text.

@xml:lang (language) indicates the language of the element content using a “tag”
 generated according to BCP 47.

Status Optional

Datatype **data.language**

Values The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use
 code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a <language> element
 with a matching value for its ident attribute should be supplied in
 the TEI Header to document this value. Such documentation may
 also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these
 must remain consistent with their (IETF)Internet Engineering Task
 Force definitions.

<p> ... The consequences of
 this rapid depopulation were the loss of the last
<foreign>
 xml:lang="rap">ariki</foreign> or chief
 (Routledge 1920:205,210) and their connections to
 ancestral territorial organization.</p>

Note the xml:lang value will be inherited from the immediately
 enclosing element, or from its parent, and so on up the
 document hierarchy. It is generally good practice to specify
 xml:lang at the highest appropriate level, noticing that a
 different default may be needed for the teiHeader from that
 needed for the associated resource element or elements, and
 that a single TEI document may contain texts in many
 languages. The authoritative list of registered language
 subtags is maintained by IANA and is available at

<http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>.
For a good general overview of the construction of language tags, see <http://www.w3.org/International/articles/language-tags/>, and for a practical step-by-step guide, see <http://www.w3.org/International/questions/qa-choosing-language-tags>.

@style contains an expression in some formal style definition language which defines the rendering or presentation used for this element in the source text
Status Optional

Datatype data.text

```
<head
  style="text-align: center; font-variant: small-caps">
  <lb/>To The <lb/>Duchesse <lb/>of <lb/>Newcastle, <lb/>On
  Her
  <lb/>
  <hi
    style="font-variant: normal">New Blazing-World</hi>
  </head>
```

Note Unlike the attribute values of `rend`, the `style` attribute may contain whitespace. This attribute is intended for recording inline stylistic information concerning the source, not any particular output. The formal language in which values for this attribute are expressed may be specified using the `<styleDefDecl>` element in the TEI Header.

@xml:space signals an intention about how white space should be managed by applications.

Status Optional

Datatype data.enumerated

Legal values are: **default** signals that the application's default white-space processing modes are acceptable
preserve indicates the intent that applications preserve all white space

Note The XML specification provides further guidance on the use of this attribute. Note that many parsers may not handle `xml:space` correctly.

att.global.analytic provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text. [17.3.]

Module analysis

Members `att.global`[TEI `accMat` `acquisition` `actor` `addName` `addSpan` `additional` `additions` `addrLine` `address` `adminInfo` `affiliation` `age` `altIdentifier` `app` `author` `authority` `availability` `back` `bibl` `biblFull` `biblStruct` `binding` `bindingDesc` `birth` `body` `byline` `c` `caesura` `calendar` `calendarDesc` `camera` `caption` `castGroup` `castItem` `castList` `catchwords` `cb` `cell` `change` `char` `charDecl` `charName` `charProp` `cit` `citedRange` `climate` `closer` `collation` `collection` `colophon` `condition` `country` `custEvent` `custodialHist` `dateline` `death` `decoDesc` `decoNote` `def` `delSpan` `depth` `dim` `dimensions` `div` `docAuthor` `docDate` `docEdition` `docImprint` `docTitle` `edition` `editor` `editorialDecl` `education` `emph` `encodingDesc` `entry` `epigraph` `epilogue` `etym` `event` `explicit` `extent` `f` `fLib` `faith` `figDesc` `fileDesc` `filiation` `finalRubric` `floruit` `foliation` `foreign` `forename` `form` `formula` `front` `fs` `g` `gap` `gb` `gen` `genName` `geo` `geogFeat` `glyph` `glyphName` `graphic` `group` `handDesc` `handNote` `handNotes` `head` `height` `heraldry` `hi` `history` `idno` `imprimatur` `imprint` `incipit` `index` `institution` `item` `l` `label` `lacunaEnd` `lacunaStart` `langKnowledge`

langKnown layout layoutDesc lb lem lg licence line list listApp listChange listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef listRelation listTranspose listWit localName location locus locusGrp mapping material media metamark milestone mod monogr move msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation nameLink nationality normalization notatedMusic notesStmt nym objectDesc objectType occupation offset opener org orgName origDate origPlace origin p pb pc performance persName person personGrp physDesc place population pos postscript prefixDef profileDesc prologue provenance pubPlace publicationStmt publisher q quote rdg rdgGrp re recordHist redo ref relation relationGrp repository residence retrace revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc roleName row rs rubric salute scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seriesStmt set sex signatures signed socecStatus sound source sourceDesc sourceDoc sp spGrp speaker stage stamp styleDefDecl subc substJoin summary superEntry support supportDesc surfaceGrp surname surplus surrogates symbol table tech teiHeader term terrain text textLang time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer trait transpose typeDesc typeNote undo unicodeName usg value variantEncoding view watermark width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness]

Attributes Attributes

@ana (analysis) indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the ana attribute appears.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values one or more valid identifiers of one or more interpretive elements (usually <fs> or <interp>), separated by white space.

Note When multiple values are given, they may reflect either multiple divergent interpretations of an ambiguous text, or multiple mutually consistent interpretations of the same passage in different contexts.

att.global.change supplies the change attribute, allowing its member elements to specify one or more states or revision campaigns with which they are associated.

Module transcr

Members att.global[TEI accMat acquisition actor addName addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo affiliation age altIdentifier app author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblStruct binding bindingDesc birth body byline c caesura calendar calendarDesc camera caption castGroup castItem castList catchwords cb cell change char charDecl charName charProp cit citedRange climate closer collation collection colophon condition country custEvent custodialHist dateline death decoDesc decoNote def delSpan depth dim dimensions div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editor editorialDecl education emph encodingDesc entry epigraph epilogue etym event explicit extent f fLib faith figDesc fileDesc filiation finalRubric floruit foliation foreign forename form formula front fs g gap gb gen genName geo geogFeat glyph glyphName graphic group handDesc handNote handNotes head height heraldry hi history idno imprimatur imprint incipit index institution item l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart langKnowledge langKnown layout layoutDesc lb lem lg licence line list listApp listChange listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef listRelation listTranspose listWit localName location locus locusGrp mapping material media metamark milestone mod monogr move msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName

msPart musicNotation nameLink nationality normalization notatedMusic notesStmt
nym objectDesc objectType occupation offset opener org orgName origDate
origPlace origin p pb pc performance persName person personGrp physDesc place
population pos postscript prefixDef profileDesc prologue provenance pubPlace
publicationStmt publisher q quote rdg rdgGrp re recordHist redo ref relation
relationGrp repository residence retrace revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc roleName
row rs rubric salute scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seriesStmt set sex
signatures signed socecStatus sound source sourceDesc sourceDoc sp spGrp speaker
stage stamp styleDefDecl subc substJoin summary superEntry support supportDesc
surfaceGrp surname surplus surrogates symbol table tech teiHeader term terrain text
textLang time title titlePage titlePart titleStmt trailer trait transpose typeDesc
typeNote undo unicodeName usg value variantEncoding view watermark width wit
witDetail witEnd witStart witness]

Attributes Attributes

@change points to one or more <change> elements documenting a state or
revision campaign to which the element bearing this attribute and its
children have been assigned by the encoder.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by
whitespace

att.global.facs groups elements corresponding with all or part of an image, because
they contain an alternative representation of it, typically but not necessarily a
transcription of it. [11.1.]

Module transcr

Members att.global[TEI accMat acquisition actor addName addSpan additional additions
addrLine address adminInfo affiliation age altIdentifier app author authority
availability back bibl biblFull biblStruct binding bindingDesc birth body byline c
caesura calendar calendarDesc camera caption castGroup castItem castList
catchwords cb cell change char charDecl charName charProp cit citedRange climate
closer collation collection colophon condition country custEvent custodialHist
dateline death decoDesc decoNote def delSpan depth dim dimensions div docAuthor
docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editor editorialDecl education emph
encodingDesc entry epigraph epilogue etym event explicit extent f fLib faith figDesc
fileDesc filiation finalRubric floruit foliation foreign forename form formula front fs g
gap gb gen genName geo geogFeat glyph glyphName graphic group handDesc
handNote handNotes head height heraldry hi history idno imprimatur imprint
incipit index institution item l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart langKnowledge
langKnown layout layoutDesc lb lem lg licence line list listApp listChange listEvent
listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef listRelation listTranspose listWit
localName location locus locusGrp mapping material media metamark milestone
mod monogr move msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName
msPart musicNotation nameLink nationality normalization notatedMusic notesStmt
nym objectDesc objectType occupation offset opener org orgName origDate
origPlace origin p pb pc performance persName person personGrp physDesc place
population pos postscript prefixDef profileDesc prologue provenance pubPlace
publicationStmt publisher q quote rdg rdgGrp re recordHist redo ref relation
relationGrp repository residence retrace revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc roleName
row rs rubric salute scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seriesStmt set sex

signatures signed socecStatus sound source sourceDesc sourceDoc sp spGrp speaker stage stamp styleDefDecl subc substJoin summary superEntry support supportDesc surfaceGrp surname surplus surrogates symbol table tech teiHeader term terrain text textLang time title titlePage titlePart titleStmnt trailer trait transpose typeDesc typeNote undo unicodeName usg value variantEncoding view watermark width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness]

Attributes Attributes

@fac (facsimile) points to all or part of an image which corresponds with the content of the element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of data.pointer separated by whitespace

att.global.linking defines a set of attributes for hypertext and other linking, which are enabled for all elements when the additional tag set for linking is selected. [16.]

Module linking

Members att.global[TEI accMat acquisition actor addName addSpan additional additions addrLine address adminInfo affiliation age altIdentifier app author authority availability back bibl biblFull biblStruct binding bindingDesc birth body byline c caesura calendar calendarDesc camera caption castGroup castItem castList catchwords cb cell change char charDecl charName charProp cit citedRange climate closer collation collection colophon condition country custEvent custodialHist dateline death decoDesc decoNote def delSpan depth dim dimensions div docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle edition editor editorialDecl education emph encodingDesc entry epigraph epilogue etym event explicit extent f fLib faith figDesc fileDesc filiation finalRubric floruit foliation foreign forename form formula front fs g gap gb gen genName geo geogFeat glyph glyphName graphic group handDesc handNote handNotes head height heraldry hi history idno imprimatur imprint incipit index institution item l label lacunaEnd lacunaStart langKnowledge langKnown layout layoutDesc lb lem lg licence line list listApp listChange listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listPrefixDef listRelation listTranspose listWit localName location locus locusGrp mapping material media metamark milestone mod monogr move msContents msDesc msIdentifier msItem msItemStruct msName msPart musicNotation nameLink nationality normalization notatedMusic notesStmnt nym objectDesc objectType occupation offset opener org orgName origDate origPlace origin p pb pc performance persName person personGrp physDesc place population pos postscript prefixDef profileDesc prologue provenance pubPlace publicationStmnt publisher q quote rdg rdgGrp re recordHist redo ref relation relationGrp repository residence retrace revisionDesc rhyme role roleDesc roleName row rs rubric salute scriptDesc scriptNote seal sealDesc secFol seriesStmnt set sex signatures signed socecStatus sound source sourceDesc sourceDoc sp spGrp speaker stage stamp styleDefDecl subc substJoin summary superEntry support supportDesc surfaceGrp surname surplus surrogates symbol table tech teiHeader term terrain text textLang time title titlePage titlePart titleStmnt trailer trait transpose typeDesc typeNote undo unicodeName usg value variantEncoding view watermark width wit witDetail witEnd witStart witness]

Attributes Attributes

@corresp (corresponds) points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

```
<p> In order to meet your instructions more fully on that
subject,
I directed <persName
  corresp="personography.xml#pemberton_jd">Mr Surveyor
Pemberton</persName>
to draw up a report describing in a general manner the
existing arrangements for the sale of
land on <placeName
  corresp="placeography.xml#vancouver_island">Vancouver's
Island</placeName>,
and the proposed arrangements for the sale of land in
<placeName
  corresp="placeography.xml#british_columbia">British
Columbia</placeName>.
</p>
<group>
  <text
    xml:id="t1-g1-t1"
    xml:lang="mi">
    <body
      xml:id="t1-g1-t1-body1">
      <div
        type="chapter">
        <head>He Whakamaramatanga mo te Ture Hoko, Riihi hoki, i
nga Whenua Maori, 1876.</head>
        <p>...</p>
      </div>
    </body>
  </text>
  <text
    xml:id="t1-g1-t2"
    xml:lang="en">
    <body
      xml:id="t1-g1-t2-body1"
      corresp="#t1-g1-t1-body1">
      <div
        type="chapter">
        <head>An Act to regulate the Sale, Letting, and Disposal
of Native Lands, 1876.</head>
        <p>...</p>
      </div>
    </body>
  </text>
</group>In this example a <group> contains two <text>s, each
containing the same document in a different language. The
correspondance is indicated using <corresp>. The language is
indicated using xml:lang, whose value is inherited; both the
tag with the <corresp> and the tag pointed to by the
<corresp> inherit the value from their immediate parent.
```

@synch (synchronous) points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

@sameAs points to an element that is the same as the current element.

Status Optional

- Datatype* `data.pointer`
- @copyOf** points to an element of which the current element is a copy.
Status Optional
- Datatype* `data.pointer`
- Note* Any content of the current element should be ignored. Its true content is that of the element being pointed at.
- @next** points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.
Status Optional
- Datatype* `data.pointer`
- @prev** (previous) points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.
Status Optional
- Datatype* `data.pointer`
- @exclude** points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.
Status Optional
- Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace
- @select** selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.
Status Optional
- Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace
- Note* This attribute should be placed on an element which is superordinate to all of the alternants from which the selection is being made.

att.handFeatures provides attributes describing aspects of the hand in which a manuscript is written. [11.3.2.1.]

Module tei

Members handNote scriptNote typeNote

Attributes Attributes

- @scribe** gives a name or other identifier for the scribe believed to be responsible for this hand.
Status Optional
- Datatype* `data.name`
- @scribeRef** points to a full description of the scribe concerned, typically supplied by a <person> element elsewhere in the description.
Status Optional
- Datatype* 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace
- @script** characterizes the particular script or writing style used by this hand, for example *secretary*, *copperplate*, *Chancery*, *Italian*, etc.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.name` separated by whitespace

@scriptRef points to a full description of the script or writing style used by this hand, typically supplied by a `<scriptNote>` element elsewhere in the description.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

@medium describes the tint or type of ink, e.g. *brown*, or other writing medium, e.g. *pencil*

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

@scope specifies how widely this hand is used in the manuscript.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **sole** only this hand is used throughout the manuscript

major this hand is used through most of the manuscript

minor this hand is used occasionally in the manuscript

Note Usually either script or scriptRef, and similarly, either scribe or scribeRef, will be supplied.

att.internetMedia provides attributes for specifying the type of a computer resource using a standard taxonomy.

Module tei

Members att.media ref

Attributes Attributes

@mimeType (MIME media type) specifies the applicable multimedia internet mail extension (MIME) media type

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.word` separated by whitespace

Values The value should be a valid MIME media type

Example In this example mimeType is used to indicate the URL points to a TEI XML file encoded in UTF-8.

```
<ref
  mimeType="application/tei+xml; charset=UTF-8"
  target="http://tei.svn.sourceforge.net/viewvc/tei/trunk/P5/Source/
guidelines-en.xml"/>
```

Note This attribute class provides attributes for describing a computer resource, typically available over the internet, according to standard taxonomies. At present only a single taxonomy is supported, the Multipurpose Internet Mail Extensions Media Type system. This system of typology of media types is defined by the Internet Engineering Task Force in RFC 2046. The list of types is maintained by the Internet Assigned Numbers Authority.

att.lexicographic defines a set of global attributes available on elements in the base tag set for dictionaries. [9.2.]

Module dictionaries

Members def etym form gen gramGrp pos re sense subc usg xr

Attributes Attributes att.datcat (@datcat, @valueDatcat)

@expand gives an expanded form of information presented more concisely in the dictionary

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

```
<gramGrp>
  <pos>n</pos>
</gramGrp>
```

@norm (normalized) gives a normalized form of information given by the source text in a non-normalized form

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

```
<gramGrp>
  <pos
    norm="noun">n</pos>
</gramGrp>
```

@split gives the list of split values for a merged form

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

@value gives a value which lacks any realization in the printed source text.

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

@orig (original) gives the original string or is the empty string when the element does not appear in the source text.

Status Optional

Datatype `text`

@location provides a reference to an `<anchor>` element typically elsewhere in the document, but possibly in another document, indicating the original location of this component.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values a valid identifier for an `<anchor>` element elsewhere in the current document.

@mergedIn gives a reference to another element, where the original appears as a merged form.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

@opt (optional) indicates whether the element is optional or not

Status Optional

Datatype `xsd:boolean`

Default false

att.metrical defines a set of attributes which certain elements may use to represent metrical information. [6.3.]

Module verse

Members att.divLike[div lg] att.segLike[pc] 1

Attributes Attributes

@met (metrical structure, conventional) contains a user-specified encoding for the conventional metrical structure of the element.

Status Recommended

Datatype token

Values May contain either a standard term for the kind of metrical unit (e.g. *hexameter*) or an encoded representation for the metrical pattern (e.g. *+--+--+--+*). In either case, the notation used should be documented by a <metDecl> element within the <encodingDesc> of the associated header.

Note Where this attribute is not specified, the metrical pattern for the element concerned is understood to be inherited from its parent.

@real (metrical structure, realized) contains a user-specified encoding for the actual realization of the conventional metrical structure applicable to the element.

Status Optional

Datatype token

Values May contain either a standard term for the kind of metrical unit (e.g. *hexameter*) or an encoded representation for the metrical pattern (e.g. *+--+--+--+*). In either case, the notation used should be documented by a <metDecl> element within the <encodingDesc> of the associated header.

Note Where this attribute is not specified, the metrical realization for the element concerned is understood to be identical to that specified or implied for the met attribute.

@rhyme (rhyme scheme) specifies the rhyme scheme applicable to a group of verse lines.

Status Recommended

Datatype token

Values By default, the rhyme scheme is expressed as a string of alphabetic characters each corresponding with a rhyming line. Any non-rhyming lines should be represented by a hyphen or an X. Alternative notations may be defined as for met by use of the <metDecl> element in the TEI header.

Note When the default notation is used, it does not make sense to specify this attribute on any unit smaller than a line. Nor does the default notation provide any way to record internal rhyme, or to specify non-conventional rhyming practice. These extensions would require user-defined alternative notations.

att.msExcerpt (manuscript excerpt) provides attributes used to describe excerpts from a manuscript placed in a description thereof. [10.6.]

Module msdescription

Members explicit incipit msContents msItem msItemStruct quote

Attributes Attributes

@defective indicates whether the passage being quoted is defective, i.e. incomplete through loss or damage.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.xTruthValue`

Default false

Note In the case of an incipit, indicates whether the incipit as given is defective, i.e. the first words of the text as preserved, as opposed to the first words of the work itself. In the case of an explicit, indicates whether the explicit as given is defective, i.e. the final words of the text as preserved, as opposed to what the closing words would have been had the text of the work been whole.

att.naming provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc. [3.5.1. 13.3.5.]

Module tei

Members att.personal[addName forename genName orgName persName roleName surname] affiliation author birth climate collection country death editor education event geogFeat institution nationality occupation origPlace population pubPlace repository residence rs socecStatus terrain trait

Attributes Attributes att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*)

@role may be used to specify further information about the entity referenced by this name, for example the occupation of a person, or the status of a place.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

@nymRef (reference to the canonical name) provides a means of locating the canonical form (*nym*) of the names associated with the object named by the element bearing it.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Note The value must point directly to one or more XML elements by means of one or more URIs, separated by whitespace. If more than one is supplied, the implication is that the name is associated with several distinct canonical names.

att.patternReplacement provides attributes for regular-expression matching and replacement. [16.2.3. 2.3.6.3. 2.3.6. 2.3.6.2.]

Module header

Members prefixDef

Attributes Attributes

@matchPattern specifies a regular expression against which the values of other attributes can be matched.

Status Required

Datatype `data.pattern`

Values must be a regular expression according to the W3C XML Schema Language

Note Parenthesized groups are used not only for establishing order of precedence and atoms for quantification, but also for creating subpatterns to be referenced by the replacementPattern attribute.

@replacementPattern specifies a “replacement pattern” which, once subpattern substitution has been performed, provides a URI.

Status Required

Datatype `text`

Values Should be the skeleton of a relative or absolute URI, with references to groups in the matchPattern.

Note The strings “\$1” through “\$9” are references to the corresponding group in the regular expression specified by matchPattern (counting open parenthesis, left to right). Processors are expected to replace them with whatever matched the corresponding group in the regular expression. If a digit preceded by a dollar sign is needed in the actual replacement pattern (as opposed to being used as a back reference), the dollar sign must be written as `%24`.

att.personal (attributes for components of names usually, but not necessarily, personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a name usually, but not necessarily, a personal name. [13.2.1.]

Module tei

Members addName forename genName orgName persName roleName surname

Attributes Attributes att.naming (*@role*, *@nymRef*) (att.canonical (*@key*, *@ref*))

@full indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **yes** the name component is spelled out in full.
[Default]

abb (abbreviated) the name component is given in an abbreviated form.

init (initial letter) the name component is indicated only by one initial.

@sort specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the name.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.count`

Values A positive number indicating the sort order.

att.placement provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears. [3.4.3. 11.3.1.4.]

Module tei

Members addSpan label metamark notatedMusic witDetail

Attributes Attributes

@place specifies where this item is placed

Status Recommended

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.enumerated` separated by whitespace

Suggested values include: **below** below the line

bottom at the foot of the page

margin in the margin (left, right, or both)

top at the top of the page

opposite on the opposite, i.e. facing, page

overleaf on the other side of the leaf

above above the line

end at the end of e.g. chapter or volume.

inline within the body of the text.

inspace in a predefined space, for example left by an earlier scribe.

<add

```
  place="margin">[An addition written in the margin]</add>
```

<add

```
  place="bottom opposite">[An addition written at the
foot of the current page and also on the facing page]</add>
```

<note

```
  place="bottom">Ibid, p.7</note>
```

att.pointing defines a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references. [1.3.1.1.2. 3.6.]

Module tei

Members calendar citedRange licence locus substJoin witDetail

Attributes Attributes

@targetLang specifies the language of the content to be found at the destination referenced by target, using a “language tag” generated according to BCP 47.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.language`

Schematron `<sch:rule context="tei:*[not(self::tei:schemaSpec)]`
 `[@targetLang]"> <sch:assert test="count(@target)">@targetLang`
 `can only be used if @target is specified.</sch:assert></sch:rule>`

Values The value must conform to BCP 47. If the value is a private use code (i.e., starts with x- or contains -x-), a `<language>` element with a matching value for its `ident` attribute should be supplied in the TEI Header to document this value. Such documentation may also optionally be supplied for non-private-use codes, though these must remain consistent with their (IETF)Internet Engineering Task Force definitions.

<linkGrp

```
  xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1-linkGrp">
```

<ptr

```
  xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.1-ptr"
  target="pol/UDHR/text.xml#pol_txt_1-head"
  type="tuv"
  targetLang="pl"/>
```

```
<ptr
  xml:id="pol-swh_aln_2.1.2-ptr"
  target="swh/UDHR/text.xml#swh_txt_1-head"
  type="tuv"
  targetLang="sw"/>
```

</linkGrp>In the example above, the <linkGrp> combines pointers at parallel fragments of the *Universal Declaration of Human Rights*: one of them is in Polish, the other in Swahili.

@target specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values One or more syntactically valid URI references, separated by whitespace. Because whitespace is used to separate URIs, no whitespace is permitted inside a single URI. If a whitespace character is required in a URI, it should be escaped with the normal mechanism, e.g. `TEI%20Consortium`.

@evaluate specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **all** if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.

one if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.

none no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.

Note If no value is given, the application program is responsible for deciding (possibly on the basis of user input) how far to trace a chain of pointers.

att.ranging provides attributes for describing numerical ranges.

Module tei

Members att.dimensions[att.editLike[att.transcriptional[addSpan delSpan mod redo retrace substJoin undo] affiliation age birth climate death education event faith floruit gap langKnowledge langKnown location nationality occupation org orgName origDate origPlace origin persName person place population relation residence sex socecStatus surplus terrain time trait] depth dim dimensions height width]

Attributes Attributes

@atLeast gives a minimum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@atMost gives a maximum estimated value for the approximate measurement.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@min where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the minimum value observed.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@max where the measurement summarizes more than one observation or a range, supplies the maximum value observed.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.numeric`

@confidence specifies the degree of statistical confidence (between zero and one) that a value falls within the range specified by min and max, or the proportion of observed values that fall within that range.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.probability`

att.rdgPart attributes for elements which mark the beginning or ending of a fragmentary manuscript or other witness. [12.1.5.]

Module textcrit

Members lacunaEnd lacunaStart wit witEnd witStart

Attributes Attributes

@wit (witness or witnesses) contains a list of one or more sigla indicating the witnesses which begin or end at this point.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values A space-delimited series of sigla; each sigil should correspond to a witness or witness group and occur as the value of the xml:id attribute on a <witness> element at the location pointed to, typically but not necessarily elsewhere in the same document.

Note These elements may appear anywhere within the elements <lem> and <rdg>, and also within any of their constituent elements.

att.resourced provides attributes by which a resource (such as an externally held media file) may be located.

Module tei

Members media

Attributes Attributes

@url (uniform resource locator) specifies the URL from which the media concerned may be obtained.

Status Required

Datatype `data.pointer`

att.responsibility provides attributes indicating who is responsible for something asserted by the markup and the degree of certainty associated with it. [1.]

Module tei

Members att.editLike[att.transcriptional[addSpan delSpan mod redo retrace substJoin undo] affiliation age birth climate death education event faith floruit gap langKnowledge langKnown location nationality occupation org orgName origDate origPlace origin persName person place population relation residence sex socecStatus surplus terrain time trait] att.textCritical[lem rdg rdgGrp] provenance witDetail

Attributes Attributes

@cert (certainty) signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.certainty`

@resp (responsible party) indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values A pointer to an element typically, but not necessarily, in the document header that is associated with a person asserted as responsible for some aspect of the text’s creation, transcription, editing, or encoding.

att.segLike provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation. [16.3. 17.1.]

Module tei

Members pc

Attributes Attributes att.metrical (*@met*, *@real*, *@rhyme*) att.datcat (*@datcat*, *@valueDatcat*) att.fragmentable (*@part*)

@function characterizes the function of the segment.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Values For a <cl>, may take values such as coordinate, subject, adverbial etc. For a <phr>, such values as subject, predicate etc. may be more appropriate.

att.sortable provides attributes for elements in lists or groups that are sortable, but whose sorting key cannot be derived mechanically from the element content. [1.]

Module tei

Members bibl biblFull biblStruct entry event idno item list listApp listChange listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation listWit msDesc nym org person personGrp place relation relationGrp superEntry witness

Attributes Attributes

@sortKey supplies the sort key for this element in an index, list or group which contains it.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.word`

Values a sequence of characters which, when sorted with the other values, will produced the desired order; specifics of sort key construction are application-dependent.

David's other principal backer, Josiah

```
ha-Kohen <index
  indexName="NAMES">
```

```
<term
  sortKey="Azarya_Josiah_Kohen">Josiah ha-Kohen b.
```

```
Azarya</term>
```

```
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura was
David's own first
cousin.
```

Note The sort key is used to determine the sequence and grouping of entries in an index. Dictionary order often differs from the collation sequence of machine-readable character sets; in English-language dictionaries, an entry for *4-H* will often appear alphabetized under “fourh”, and *McCoy* may be alphabetized under “maccoy”, while *A1*, *A4*, and *A5* may all appear in numeric order “alphabetized” between “a-” and “AA”. The sort key is required if the orthography of the dictionary entry does not suffice to determine its location.

att.source provides attributes for pointing to the source of a bibliographic reference.

[3.3.3. 8.3.4.]

Module tei

Members q quote

Attributes Attributes

@source (pointer to a bibliographical source reference) provides a pointer to the bibliographical source from which a quotation or citation is drawn.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values Must point to one or more bibliographic elements in the TEI header or elsewhere

Example

```
<p>
<!-- ... -->
As Willard McCarty (<bibl xml:id="mcc_2012">2012, p.2</bibl>)
tells us, <quote source="#mcc_2012">'Collaboration' is a
problematic and should be a contested term.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
```

Example

```
<p>
<!-- ... -->
<quote source="#chicago_15_ed">Grammatical theories
are in flux, and the more we learn, the less we
seem to know.</quote>
<!-- ... -->
</p>
<!-- ... -->
<bibl xml:id="chicago_15_ed">
<title level="m">The Chicago Manual of Style</title>,</b>
```

```
<edition>15th edition</edition>.  
<pubPlace>Chicago</pubPlace>:  
<publisher>University of Chicago Press</publisher>  
(<date>2003</date>),  
<biblScope type="pp">p.147</biblScope>.  
  
</bibl>
```

att.spanning provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it. [1.3.1.]

Module tei

Members addSpan cb delSpan gb index lb metamark milestone mod pb redo retrace undo

Attributes Attributes

@spanTo indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Schematron The **@spanTo** attribute must point to an element following the current element `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]">
<sch:assert test="following::*[@xml:id=substring(current()/
@target,2)]">`The element indicated by **@spanTo** must follow the current element `<sch:name/> </sch:assert></sch:rule>`

Schematron La valeur de **@spanTo** doit identifier un element dans le document actuel `<sch:rule context="tei:*[@spanTo]">
<sch:assert test="id(substring(@spanTo,2))">@spanTo on
<sch:name/>` must point to the identifier of some element in this document `</sch:assert></sch:rule>`

Values points to an element following this one in the current document.

Note The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the **spanTo** attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element. If no content is present, the assumption is that the starting point of the span is immediately following the element itself.

att.styleDef groups elements which specify the name of a formal definition language used to provide formatting or rendition information.

Module tei

Members styleDefDecl

Attributes Attributes

@scheme identifies the language used to describe the rendition.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **css** Cascading Stylesheet Language

xslfo Extensible Stylesheet Language Formatting Objects

free Informal free text description

other A user-defined rendition description language

Note If no formal definition language is supplied or implied, the default assumption is that CSS is in use.

att.tableDecoration provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table. [14.]

Module tei

Members cell row

Attributes Attributes

@role indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Suggested values include: **label** labelling or descriptive information only.

data data values.[Default]

Note When this attribute is specified on a row, its value is the default for all cells in this row. When specified on a cell, its value overrides any default specified by the role attribute of the parent <row> element.

@rows indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.count`

Default 1

Values A number; a value greater than one indicates that this cell (or row) spans several rows.

Note Where several cells span several rows, it may be more convenient to use nested tables.

@cols (columns) indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.count`

Default 1

Values A number; a value greater than one indicates that this cell or row spans several columns.

Note Where an initial cell spans an entire row, it may be better treated as a heading.

att.textCritical defines a set of attributes common to all elements representing variant readings in text critical work. [12.1.]

Module textcrit

Members lem rdg rdgGrp

Attributes Attributes att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*)

@type classifies the reading according to some useful typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **substantive** the reading offers a substantive variant.

orthographic the reading differs only orthographically, not in substance, from other readings.

@cause classifies the cause for the variant reading, according to any appropriate typology of possible origins.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **homeoteleuton**

homeoarchy

paleographicConfusion

haplography

dittography

falseEmendation

@varSeq (variant sequence) provides a number indicating the position of this reading in a sequence, when there is reason to presume a sequence to the variants on any one lemma.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.count`

Note Different variant sequences could be coded with distinct number trails: 1-2-3 for one sequence, 5-6-7 for another. More complex variant sequences, with (for example) multiple branchings from single readings, may be expressed through the `<join>` element.

@hand signifies the hand responsible for a particular reading in the witness.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values must be one of the hand identifiers declared in the document header (see section 11.3.2.1.).

Note This attribute is only available within an apparatus gathering variant readings in the transcription of an individual witness. It may not occur in an apparatus gathering readings from different witnesses.

Note This element class defines attributes inherited by `<rdg>`, `<lem>`, and `<rdgGrp>`.

att.timed provides attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map. [8.3.5.]

Module tei

Members media

Attributes Attributes

@start indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Note If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to follow the immediately preceding element at the same hierarchic level.

@end indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Note If no value is supplied, the element is assumed to precede the immediately following element at the same hierarchic level.

att.transcriptional provides attributes specific to elements encoding authorial or scribal intervention in a text when transcribing manuscript or similar sources. [1.]

Module tei

Members addSpan delSpan mod redo retrace substJoin undo

Attributes Attributes att.editLike (*@evidence*, *@source*, *@instant*) (att.dimensions (*@unit*, *@quantity*, *@extent*, *@precision*, *@scope*) (att.ranging (*@atLeast*, *@atMost*, *@min*, *@max*, *@confidence*))) (att.responsibility (*@cert*, *@resp*))

@hand signifies the hand of the agent which made the intervention.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.pointer`

Values must refer to a <handNote> element, typically declared in the document header (see section 11.3.2.1.).

@status indicates the effect of the intervention, for example in the case of a deletion, strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or in the case of an addition, an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Sample values include: **duplicate** all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.

duplicate-partial part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original

excessStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

excessEnd some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.

shortStart some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

shortEnd some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

partial some text in the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.

unremarkable the deletion is not faulty.[Default]

Note Status information on each deletion is needed rather rarely except in critical editions from authorial manuscripts; status information on additions is even less common. Marking a deletion or addition as faulty is inescapably an interpretive act; the usual test applied in practice is the linguistic acceptability of the text with and without the letters or words in question.

@cause documents the presumed cause for the intervention.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Legal values are: **fix** repeated for the purpose of fixation

unclear repeated to clarify a previously illegible or badly written text or mark

@seq (sequence) assigns a sequence number related to the order in which the encoded features carrying this attribute are believed to have occurred.

Status Mandatory when applicable

Datatype `data.count`

att.typed provides attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way. [1.3.1.]

Module tei

Members accMat addName addSpan altIdentifier bibl biblStruct camera cb change charProp cit climate collection country custEvent decoNote delSpan dim div event explicit filiation finalRubric forename g gb genName geogFeat head incipit label lb lg line listApp listEvent listNym listOrg listPerson listPlace listRelation location mapping media milestone mod msDesc msName nameLink notatedMusic nym offset org orgName origDate origPlace pb pc persName place population provenance quote re relationGrp rhyme roleName rubric seal spGrp stamp surfaceGrp surname terrain text time trailer trait

Attributes Attributes

@type characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

```
<div
  type="verse">
  <head>Night in Tarras</head>
  <lg
    type="stanza">
    <l>At evening tramping on the hot white road</l>
    <l>...</l>
  </lg>
  <lg
    type="stanza">
    <l>A wind sprang up from nowhere as the sky</l>
    <l>...</l>
  </lg>
</div>
```

Note The type attribute is present on a number of elements, not all of which are members of att.typed, usually because these elements restrict the possible values for the attribute in a specific way.

@subtype provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed

Status Optional

Datatype `data.enumerated`

Note The subtype attribute may be used to provide any sub-classification for the element additional to that provided by its type attribute.

Schematron <sch:rule context="*[@subtype]"> <sch:assert test="@type">The <sch:name/> element should not be categorized in detail with @subtype unless also categorized in general with @type</sch:assert></sch:rule>

Note When appropriate, values from an established typology should be used. Alternatively a typology may be defined in the associated TEI header. If values are to be taken from a project-specific list, this should be defined using the <valList> element in the project-specific schema description, as described in 23.3.1.4. .

att.witnessed supplies the attribute used to identify the witnesses supporting a particular reading in a critical apparatus. [12.1.]

Module textcrit

Members lem rdg

Attributes Attributes

@wit (witness or witnesses) contains a list of one or more pointers indicating the witnesses which attest to a given reading.

Status Optional

Datatype 1–∞ occurrences of `data.pointer` separated by whitespace

Values A space-delimited series of sigla; each sigil should correspond to a witness or witness group and occur as the value of the xml:id attribute on a <witness> element elsewhere in the document.

Note If the apparatus contains readings only for a single witness, this attribute may be consistently omitted. This attribute may occur both within an apparatus gathering variant readings in the transcription of an individual witness and within an apparatus gathering readings from different witnesses.

Additional descriptions or alternative versions of the sigla referenced may be supplied as the content of a child <wit> element.

2.4 Macros

data.certainty defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration `data.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"`

Note Certainty may be expressed by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, or low. The value unknown should be used in cases where the encoder does not wish to assert an opinion about the matter. For more precise indication, `data.probability` may be used instead or in addition.

data.code defines the range of attribute values expressing a coded value by means of a pointer to some other element which contains a definition for it.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration `data.code = data.word`

Note It will usually be the case that the item pointed to is to be found somewhere else in the current TEI document, typically in the header, but this is not mandatory.

data.count defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- age/@value
- handDesc/@hands
- layout/@columns
- layout/@ruledLines
- layout/@writtenLines
- sense/@level
- table/@rows
- table/@cols

Declaration `data.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger`

Note Only positive integer values (including zero) are permitted

data.duration.iso defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using ISO 8601 standard formats

Module tei

Used by

Declaration

```
data.duration.iso = token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\+\-]+" }
```

Example

```
<time dur-iso="PT0,75H">three-quarters of an hour</time>
```

Example

```
<date dur-iso="P1,5D">a day and a half</date>
```

Example

```
<date dur-iso="P14D">a fortnight</date>
```

Example

```
<time dur-iso="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

Note A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the last, which may have a decimal component (using either . or , as the decimal point; the latter is preferred). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second)

number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first “time” number-letter pair. For complete details, see ISO 8601 *Data elements and interchange formats — Information interchange — Representation of dates and times*.

data.duration.w3c defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time using W3C datatypes.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration `data.duration.w3c = xsd:duration`

Example

```
<time dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</time>
```

Example

```
<date dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</date>
```

Example

```
<date dur="P7D">a week</date>
```

Example

```
<time dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</time>
```

Note A duration is expressed as a sequence of number-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour), M (minute), or S (second), in that order. The numbers are all unsigned integers, except for the S number, which may have a decimal component (using . as the decimal point). If any number is 0, then that number-letter pair may be omitted. If any of the H (hour), M (minute), or S (second) number-letter pairs are present, then the separator T must precede the first “time” number-letter pair. For complete details, see the W3C specification.

data.enumerated defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single XML name taken from a list of documented possibilities.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- app/@type
- availability/@status
- castItem/@type
- citedRange/@unit
- dimensions/@type
- form/@type
- formula/@notation
- fs/@type
- gap/@agent
- idno/@type

- list/@type
- milestone/@unit
- move/@type
- move/@where
- normalization/@method
- note/@place
- note/@type
- objectDesc/@form
- pc/@force
- pc/@unit
- person/@role
- person/@age
- personGrp/@role
- personGrp/@age
- q/@type
- relation/@type
- relation/@name
- rs/@type
- sound/@type
- stage/@type
- supportDesc/@material
- tech/@type
- tech/@perf
- teiHeader/@type
- title/@type
- title/@level
- titlePage/@type
- titlePart/@type
- unclear/@agent
- usg/@type
- variantEncoding/@method
- variantEncoding/@location
- witDetail/@type
- xr/@type

Declaration `data.enumerated = data.name`

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits. Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated attribute specification, expressed with a <valList> element.

data.language defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system. [6.1.]

Module tei

Used by Element:

- langKnowledge/@tags
- langKnown/@tag
- textLang/@mainLang
- textLang/@otherLangs

Declaration `data.language = xsd:language`

Note The values for this attribute are language “tags” as defined in BCP 47. Currently BCP 47 comprises RFC 4646 and RFC 4647; over time, other IETF documents may succeed these as the best current practice. A “language tag”, per BCP 47, is assembled from a sequence of components or *subtags* separated by the hyphen character (-, U+002D). The tag is made of the following subtags, in the following order. Every subtag except the first is optional. If present, each occurs only once, except the fourth and fifth components (variant and extension), which are repeatable.

language The IANA-registered code for the language. This is almost always the same as the ISO 639 2-letter language code if there is one. The list of available registered language subtags can be found at <http://www.iana.org/assignments/language-subtag-registry>. It is recommended that this code be written in lower case.

script The ISO 15924 code for the script. These codes consist of 4 letters, and it is recommended they be written with an initial capital, the other three letters in lower case. The canonical list of codes is maintained by the Unicode Consortium, and is available at <http://unicode.org/iso15924/iso15924-codes.html>. The IETF recommends this code be omitted unless it is necessary to make a distinction you need.

region Either an ISO 3166 country code or a UN M.49 region code that is registered with IANA (not all such codes are registered, e.g. UN codes for economic groupings or codes for countries for which there is already an ISO 3166 2-letter code are not registered). The former consist of 2 letters, and it is recommended they be written in upper case. The list of codes can be found at <http://www.iso.org/iso/en/prods-services/iso3166ma/02iso-3166-code-lists/index.html>. The latter consist of 3 digits; the list of codes can be found at <http://unstats.un.org/unsd/methods/m49/m49.htm>.

variant An IANA-registered variation. These codes “are used to indicate additional, well-recognized variations that define a language or its dialects that are not covered by other available subtags”.

extension An extension has the format of a single letter followed by a hyphen followed by additional subtags. These exist to allow for future extension to BCP 47, but as of this writing no such extensions are in use.

private use An extension that uses the initial subtag of the single letter *x* (i.e., starts with *x-*) has no meaning except as negotiated among the parties involved. These should be used with great care, since they interfere with the

interoperability that use of RFC 4646 is intended to promote. In order for a document that makes use of these subtags to be TEI conformant, a corresponding <language> element must be present in the TEI header.

There are two exceptions to the above format. First, there are language tags in the IANA registry that do not match the above syntax, but are present because they have been “grandfathered” from previous specifications.

Second, an entire language tag can consist of only a private use subtag. These tags start with **x-**, and do not need to follow any further rules established by the IETF and endorsed by these Guidelines. Like all language tags that make use of private use subtags, the language in question must be documented in a corresponding <language> element in the TEI header.

Examples include

sn Shona

zh-TW Taiwanese

zh-Hant-HK Chinese written in traditional script as used in Hong Kong

en-SL English as spoken in Sierra Leone

pl Polish

es-MX Spanish as spoken in Mexico

es-419 Spanish as spoken in Latin America

The W3C Internationalization Activity has published a useful introduction to BCP 47, Language tags in HTML and XML.

data.name defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML Name.

Module tei

Used by data.enumeratedElement:

- f/@name
- index/@indexName
- prefixDef/@ident

Declaration `data.name = xsd:Name`

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name (see <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#dt-name>): for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

data.numeric defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration

```
data.numeric =  
  xsd:double | token { pattern = "(\\-?[\\d]+/\\-?[\\d]+)" } | xsd:decimal
```


Note Any numeric value, represented as a decimal number, in floating point format, or as a ratio. To represent a floating point number, expressed in scientific notation, “E notation”, a variant of “exponential notation”, may be used. In this format, the value is expressed as two numbers separated by the letter E. The first number, the significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is given in decimal format, while the second is an integer. The value is obtained by multiplying the mantissa by 10 the number of times indicated by the integer. Thus the value represented in decimal notation as 1000.0 might be represented in scientific notation as 10E3. A value expressed as a ratio is represented by two integer values separated by a solidus (/) character. Thus, the value represented in decimal notation as 0.5 might be represented as a ratio by the string 1/2.

data.outputMeasurement defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display on the web.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration

```
data.outputMeasurement =
  token
  {
    pattern = "[\ -+]? \d+(\.\d+)? (%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm) "
```

Example

```
<figure>
  <head>The TEI Logo</head>
  <figDesc>Stylized yellow angle brackets with the letters
<mentioned>TEI</mentioned> in
  between and <mentioned>text encoding initiative</mentioned> underneath,
all on a white
  background.</figDesc>
  <graphic
    height="600px"
    width="600px"
    url="http://www.tei-c.org/logos/TEI-600.jpg"/>
</figure>
```

Note These values map directly onto the values used by XSL-FO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

data.pattern (regular expression pattern) defines attribute values which are expressed as a regular expression.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration `data.pattern = token`

Note A regular expression, often called a *pattern*, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings *Handel*, *Händel*, and *Haendel* can be described by the

pattern `H(ä|ae?)ndel` (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern `H(ä|ae?)ndel` *matches* each of the three strings)

data.pointer defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single URI pointer to any other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- app/@from
- app/@to
- change/@target
- event/@where
- f/@fVal
- fs/@feats
- g/@ref
- gap/@hand
- graphic/@url
- locus/@scheme
- locusGrp/@scheme
- metamark/@target
- move/@perf
- msContents/@class
- msItem/@class
- msItemStruct/@class
- normalization/@source
- note/@target
- note/@resp
- nym/@parts
- occupation/@scheme
- occupation/@code
- redo/@target
- ref/@target
- relation/@active
- relation/@mutual
- relation/@passive
- socecStatus/@scheme
- socecStatus/@code
- term/@target
- unclear/@hand
- undo/@target
- w/@lemmaRef

- witDetail/@wit

Declaration `data.pointer = xsd:anyURI`

Note The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 3986 *Uniform Resource Identifier (URI): Generic Syntax*. Note that the values themselves are encoded using RFC 3987 *Internationalized Resource Identifiers (IRIs) mapping to URIs*. For example, `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%` is encoded as `https://secure.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/en/wiki/%25` while `http:///وزارة-الاتصالات.مصر` is encoded as `http://xn--4gbrim.xn----rmckbbajlc6dj7bxne2c.xn--wgbh1c/`

data.probability defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability.

Module tei

Used by

Declaration

```
data.probability = xsd:double { minInclusive = "0" maxInclusive = "1" }
```

Note Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing *certainly false* and 1 representing *certainly true*.

data.sex defines the range of attribute values used to identify human or animal sex.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- person/@sex
- sex/@value

Declaration `data.sex = "0" | "1" | "2" | "9"`

Note The values are taken from ISO 5218:2004 *Representation of Human Sexes*; 0 indicates unknown; 1 indicates male; 2 indicates female; and 9 indicates not applicable.

data.temporal.iso defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the international standard *Data elements and interchange formats – Information interchange – Representation of dates and times*.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- date/@when
- date/@notBefore
- date/@notAfter
- date/@from
- date/@to

Declaration

```
data.temporal.iso =
  xsd:date
  | xsd:gYear
  | xsd:gMonth
  | xsd:gDay
  | xsd:gYearMonth
  | xsd:gMonthDay
  | xsd:time
  | xsd:dateTime
  | token { pattern = "[0-9.,DHMPRSTWYZ/:\-]+" }
```

Note If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the `dateTime` representation should be used. For all representations for which ISO 8601 describes both a *basic* and an *extended* format, these Guidelines recommend use of the extended format. While ISO 8601 permits the use of both **00:00** and **24:00** to represent midnight, these Guidelines strongly recommend against the use of **24:00**.

data.temporal.w3c defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them, that conform to the *W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes* specification.

Module `tei`

Used by Element:

- `docDate/@when`

Declaration

```
data.temporal.w3c =
  xsd:date
  | xsd:gYear
  | xsd:gMonth
  | xsd:gDay
  | xsd:gYearMonth
  | xsd:gMonthDay
  | xsd:time
  | xsd:dateTime
```

Note If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the `dateTime` representation should be used.

data.text defines the range of attribute values used to express some kind of identifying string as a single sequence of unicode characters possibly including whitespace.

Module `tei`

Used by Element:

- `w/@lemma`

Declaration `data.text = string`

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single “token” in which whitespace and other punctuation characters are permitted.

data.truthValue defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- listChange/@ordered
- note/@anchored
- pc/@pre

Declaration `data.truthValue = xsd:boolean`

Note The possible values of this datatype are 1 or true, or 0 or false.

Note This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. unknown, or inapplicable, it should have the extended version of this datatype: data.xTruthValue.

data.version defines the range of attribute values which may be used to specify a TEI version number.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- TEI/@version
- unicodeName/@version

Declaration

`data.version = token { pattern = "[\d]+(\.[\d+]{0,2}" }`

Note The value of this attribute follows the pattern specified by the Unicode consortium for its version number (<http://unicode.org/version>). A version number contains digits and fullstop characters only. The first number supplied identifies the major version number. A second and third number, for minor and sub-minor version numbers, may also be supplied.

data.word defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token.

Module tei

Used by data.codeElement:

- app/@loc
- citedRange/@from
- citedRange/@to
- gap/@reason
- langKnown/@level
- locus/@from
- locus/@to
- media/@mimeType
- metamark/@function
- org/@role
- personGrp/@size

- rhyme/@label
- surplus/@reason
- symbol/@value
- unclear/@reason

Declaration

```
data.word = token { pattern = "(\\p{L}|\\p{N}|\\p{P}|\\p{S})+" }
```

Note Attributes using this datatype must contain a single “word” which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

data.xTruthValue (extended truth value) defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown.

Module tei

Used by Element:

- binding/@contemporary
- seal/@contemporary
- sound/@discrete

Declaration

```
data.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable"
```

Note In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype data.TruthValue.

macro.limitedContent (paragraph content) defines the content of prose elements that are not used for transcription of extant materials. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by figDesc witness

Declaration

```
macro.limitedContent = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.inter )*
```

macro.paraContent (paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by camera caption cell corr def docEdition emph gen hi imprimatur l mod orig p pos ref reg retrace rhyme sic signed sound subc surplus tech title titlePart unclear usg

Declaration

```
macro.paraContent =  
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global | lg )*
```

macro.phraseSeq (phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements. [1.4.1.]

Module tei

Used by abbr actor addName addrLine affiliation author birth catchwords citedRange colophon country dateline death docAuthor docDate edition editor education expand explicit extent faith finalRubric floruit foreign forename genName heraldry incipit label material nameLink nationality objectType occupation orgName origPlace persName pubPlace publisher residence role roleDesc roleName rs rubric salute secFol sex signatures socecStatus speaker stamp summary surname term textLang trailer watermark wit witDetail

Declaration

```
macro.phraseSeq = ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
```

macro.phraseSeq.limited (limited phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and those phrase-level elements that are not typically used for transcribing extant documents. [1.4.1.]

Module tei

Used by age authority langKnown

Declaration

```
macro.phraseSeq.limited = ( text | model.limitedPhrase | model.global )*
```

macro.specialPara ('special' paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements. [1.3.]

Module tei

Used by accMat acquisition additions change collation condition custEvent decoNote filiation foliation handNote item layout licence metamark musicNotation note origin provenance q quote scriptNote source stage support surrogates typeNote view

Declaration

```
macro.specialPara =  
(  
  text  
  | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter  
  | model.divPart    | model.global    )*
```

macro.xtext (extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.

Module tei

Used by c collection depth dim geogFeat height institution locus mapping msName offset repository value width

Declaration

```
macro.xtext = ( text | model.gLike )*
```